

NATIONAL TRANSPORTATION SAFETY BOARD

**THE INVESTIGATION OF KOREAN AIR FLIGHT 801,
B-747-300, AGANA, GUAM
AUGUST 6, 1997**

Ballroom A and B
Hawaii Convention Center
1833 Kalakaua Avenue
Honolulu, Hawaii 96815

Thursday, March 26th, 1999
8:00 a.m.

NTSB Board of Inquiry Members

HONORABLE ROBERT T. FRANCIS, Chairman
RONALD L. SCHLEEDE
BEN BERMAN
MONTY MONTGOMERY
PAT CARISEO

Technical Panel Members

GREGORY FEITH
PAUL MISENCIK
MALCOLM BRENNER
GARY HAMMACK
GREGORY PHILLIPS
CHARLES PEREIRA
RICHARD WENTWORTH
SCOTT DUNHAM

Public Information Officer

PAUL SCHLAMM

General Counsel

DAVID BASS, ESQ.

**EXECUTIVE COURT REPORTERS, INC.
(301) 565-0064**

Parties to the Hearing

FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION
AAI-100
800 Independence Avenue, SW
Washington, D.C. 20591

BOEING COMMERCIAL AIRPLANE GROUP
MS 67-PR
535 Garden Avenue, North
Renton, Washington 98055

KOREAN AIR COMPANY LTD.
Kang seo Ku Kong hng Dong #351
Korean Air Building
Seoul, Korea

NATIONAL AIR TRAFFIC CONTROLLERS ASSOCIATION
1341 North Camino De Juan
Tucson, Arizona 85745

BARTON ATC INTERNATIONAL INC.
Barton/Serco Management Services, Inc.
20 East Clementon Road
Gibbsboro, New Jersey 08026

GOVERNMENT OF GUAM
Governor's Office
P.O. Box 2950
Agana, Guam 96932

EXECUTIVE COURT REPORTERS, INC.
(301) 565-0064

A G E N D A

<u>AGENDA ITEM</u>	<u>PAGE:</u>
Testimony of Nelson Spohnheimer National Resource Engineer for Navigation Federal Aviation Administration Renton, Washington	515
Testimony of Captain Paul Woodburn British Airways Chairman, ICAO, CFIT Steering Committee London, England	565
Testimony of Donald Bateman Chief Engineer, Flight Safety Systems Allied Signal, Inc. Redmond, Washington	628
Testimony of William Henderson Manager Western Flight Procedures Development Branch FAA Western Pacific Regional Office Los Angeles, California	688
Testimony of James Terpstra Senior Corporate Vice President Flight Information Technology and External Affairs Jeppesen Sanderson, Inc. Englewood, Colorado	728
Testimony of Captain Wallace Roberts Former Chairman, ALPA CHIPS Committee Air Line Pilots Association (ALPA) Herndon, Virginia	780

1 P R O C E E D I N G S

2 8:00 a.m.

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Feith's watch
4 indicates that it's now 8:00. So, I think we'll get
5 started, and hopefully with an eye on making certain
6 that we do our usual comprehensive job. If we can move
7 along, maybe we won't still be here at late in the day
8 this afternoon.

9 Our first witness is Nelson Spohnheimer,
10 National Resource Engineer for Navigation at the FAA in
11 Renton, Washington.
12 Whereupon,

13 NELSON SPOHNHEIMER
14 having been first duly sworn, was called as a witness
15 herein and was examined and testified as follows:

16 TESTIMONY OF NELSON SPOHNHEIMER
17 NATIONAL RESOURCE ENGINEER FOR NAVIGATION
18 FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION
19 RENTON, WASHINGTON

20 MR. SCHLEEDE: Please give us your full name
21 and business address for the record.

22 THE WITNESS: Yes. Good morning. My name is
23 Levi Nelson Spohnheimer. I work for the FAA at the

1 Northwest Mountain Region Headquarters in Seattle, 1601
2 Lind Avenue, SW, Renton, Washington 98055.

3 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you. And what is your
4 position at the FAA?

5 THE WITNESS: Well, my title is National
6 Resource Engineer for Navigation, which -- which means
7 that I work on a wide variety of technical topics
8 related to all kinds of ground-based navigational aids
9 and their flight testing.

10 MR. SCHLEEDE: Would you give us a brief
11 summary of your education, training and experience that
12 qualifies you for this position?

13 THE WITNESS: Surely. I have an electrical
14 engineering degree from Iowa State University. I
15 worked for about six years in industry for Texas
16 Instruments and Motorola as a radio frequency design
17 engineer. During that time, I became system engineer
18 on an instrument landing systems contract, and as a
19 result, I joined the FAA. I've been working on ground-
20 based nav aids of all types for about 24 years.

21 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you very much.

22 Mr. Phillips will proceed.

23 MR. PHILLIPS: Good morning, Mr. Spohnheimer.

24 THE WITNESS: Good morning.

1 MR. PHILLIPS: Have you had any accident
2 investigation experience in your career?

3 THE WITNESS: Well, yes, I have. I'm -- I'm
4 the Northwest Mountain Region accident representative
5 for airway facilities, and I work on various national
6 accidents, typically those having navigation issues.

7 I've worked on the litigation of a number of
8 cases, and I've served on the Air Force Board for the
9 Bosnia accident.

10 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Most of your experience
11 then has dealt with the ground-based side of the
12 equipment?

13 THE WITNESS: In general, that's correct. I
14 -- I spent a lot of time with the airborne flight
15 testing organization, but most of my work is on the
16 ground equipment.

17 MR. PHILLIPS: Could you describe a typical
18 work day for yourself?

19 THE WITNESS: Well, fortunately, it varies
20 quite a lot. I travel extensively, about 40 weeks a
21 year. So, each week is different. But in a given
22 month or two period, I might teach a technical class or
23 seminar, do some trouble-shooting work on signal and
24 space problems with ground-based nav aids, visit two or
25 three companies who have applied for FAA approval for

1 their nav aids equipment, write some technical papers.

2 I serve on a couple international civil
3 aviation organization committees that deal with
4 standards and testing of ground-based nav aids.

5 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Have you been present
6 the last two days during the testimony in the hearing,
7 and are you familiar with the issues in this hearing?

8 THE WITNESS: Yes, I have, and I am.

9 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. And specifically, I
10 realize that your expertise covers a lot of areas, I'd
11 like to address my questioning today in the areas of
12 the instrument landing systems, and along those lines,
13 I'd like to ask you just a few questions about what is
14 an ILS. Let's lay a little foundation for what is an
15 instrument landing system, how does it work. Go ahead.

16 THE WITNESS: Okay. An instrument landing
17 system is a ground-based electronics system composed of
18 about six subsystems that provide lateral and vertical
19 guidance and fixes or rough knowledge of position to
20 the pilot along the approach path to an airport.

21 MR. PHILLIPS: Would you -- would we like to
22 go ahead and put up Page 6 of Exhibit 9-E, Teddy?
23 Would this help in your discussion?

24 THE WITNESS: Well, yes, thank you. This is
25 the simplified but sufficient diagram of the nature of

1 the needle indications that are provided to a pilot
2 while flying an instrument landing system approach.

3 The needle, as you can see in the bottom
4 right-hand corner of the -- of the picture or the
5 indicator, rather, consists of two needles, a fly
6 right/fly left and a fly up/fly down, and the antenna
7 system on the ground is arranged in such a way that
8 these needles deflect proportionately more and more as
9 the aircraft departs more and more from the desired
10 course or glide path.

11 The system operates by transmitting two
12 tones, much like two notes on the piano, and these
13 tones are arranged to be equal in signal strength on
14 the desired path, and -- and as the airplane moves from
15 the desired path, the two tones become unequal in
16 magnitude, and -- and it is that inequality that moves
17 the needles on the cockpit indicator.

18 MR. PHILLIPS: Is this -- is this the
19 standard ILS system used around the world? Are there
20 any differences in the design?

21 THE WITNESS: No. This -- this basic
22 character is -- has been standardized worldwide for
23 nearly 50 years.

24 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Speaking of standards,
25 are there technical standards that dictate the design

1 requirements for ILS components?

2 THE WITNESS: Yes, there are a number.
3 Internationally, the signal and space is defined by the
4 International Civil Aviation Organization in a document
5 called "Annex 10". The standards -- the standards are
6 listed in the manner that define very fully the signal
7 and space characteristics.

8 Receivers, which must use that signal and
9 space, have their characteristics defined by, in
10 general, two organizations, RTCA in the U.S., which is
11 the Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics, and a
12 European equivalent called Eurocae, E-U-R-O-C-A-E.
13 These bodies are -- are consortiums of manufacturers in
14 general and regulatory agencies, and their standards
15 define how the receiver will react to the signal and
16 space that's defined by ICAO.

17 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Do the FAA requirements
18 require these standards to be met before they're
19 installed on airplane or ground-based equipment?

20 THE WITNESS: Yes. For -- for most
21 operations, certainly air carrier operations, the --
22 the receivers must meet what's called a technical
23 standard order, a TSO, which FAA publishes. It
24 provides a regulatory trail to the RTCA standards in
25 most cases. So that an approved installation on an

1 airplane of an instrument landing system receiver must
2 meet the applicable RTCA document.

3 MR. PHILLIPS: How long have instrument
4 landing systems been in use?

5 THE WITNESS: Difficult to say precisely, but
6 the early development occurred roughly at the beginning
7 of World War II, and the system that we know today was
8 pretty well standardized by the end of World War II.

9 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Have there been
10 enhancements or improvements over the years into that
11 system?

12 THE WITNESS: Well, yes, on the ground side.
13 Although the basic signal generation system has been
14 pretty much standard, the antenna systems that attempt
15 to keep the signal of high quality, straight, with no
16 variations along the approach path, have had to get
17 more and more advanced due to the encroachment of
18 hangars and other reflecting sources on or near
19 airports.

20 So, in -- in the main, the science of
21 instrument landing systems is the science of antenna
22 systems on the ground side.

23 On the airborne side, of course, as we went
24 from tubes to transistors to integrated circuits and
25 now software-based or receivers that contain software,

1 there's a continual advancement in the performance, but
2 the general description and the general way in which
3 all ground and airborne systems behave has remained
4 unchanged.

5 MR. PHILLIPS: In regards to some of the RTCA
6 standards that control the design or specify the design
7 for this equipment, specifically DO-131, 132, 192 and
8 195, can you elaborate on -- on your opinion or
9 assessment of the differences in these standards over
10 the years?

11 THE WITNESS: Surely. Two of those were
12 published in 1978 and defined how localizer and glide
13 scope receivers should behave, and the other two were
14 published in the mid-'80s, I think 1986, and were
15 updates to address the changing environment in which
16 aircraft operate.

17 For example, the occasion of other
18 transmitters, paging systems, cellular radio systems,
19 tv systems and so on has meant that receivers have to
20 be able to operate in more and more demanding
21 environments. As these installations encroach around
22 airports, the frequency congestion gets higher.

23 So, one of the areas about receiver design
24 that has received a lot of attention in the last four
25 or five years is increased immunity to such out-of-band

1 signals, and, of course, the software is a new --
2 relatively new change in airborne equipment, and one of
3 the more recent updates deals with software quality
4 assurance.

5 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Are you aware of any
6 accidents or incidents where ILS system components,
7 ground-based side, because of your experience, have
8 been an issue?

9 THE WITNESS: No, I'm not. I have worked on
10 a number of lawsuit cases as a witness, and to my
11 knowledge, no instrument landing system has been found
12 causative for an accident.

13 MR. PHILLIPS: You heard the testimony, I
14 believe, in the beginning day of the hearing, the crew
15 of Korean Air Flight 801 commented several times about
16 a glide scope signal or at least the glide scope flag,
17 glide scope operation, when the -- we know -- we know
18 that the glide scope equipment wasn't present at the
19 time, the transmitter.

20 Would you like to comment on that in general
21 terms?

22 THE WITNESS: Well, yes. As you say, the --
23 the intended glide scope signal had been removed for
24 service to replace its shelter and was out of service
25 for about a month prior to and after the accident.

1 The pilot would normally be warned that a
2 signal is not present by the presence of a flag, a
3 warning flag, that indicates that something about the
4 receiver system or something about the ground system is
5 abnormal, and one has to assume that these remarks had
6 to do with the presence or absence of flags.

7 There are enough remarks in the record that I
8 have to conclude that there must have been some sort of
9 flag activity coming into view, disappearing from view,
10 some time during the approach.

11 MR. PHILLIPS: Is that unusual in lieu of the
12 fact that we know no transmitter was present?

13 THE WITNESS: Well, no. When we have an
14 empty channel, many of these potential external sources
15 of noise and unintended signals, which are normally too
16 weak to be heard, can be heard, and it's fairly common
17 when we test airborne flight tests, instrument landing
18 systems, and we turn off the localizer or the glide
19 scope that -- that we record on our instrumentation
20 intermittent indications of flag and needle activity,
21 and as a result, the aviation community relies on
22 notices to airmen as a procedural means to advise
23 everyone that the channel is empty.

24 MR. PHILLIPS: Would you expect these -- this
25 flag movement to cover a time period that would

1 indicate to a crew that the signal may be valid?

2 THE WITNESS: Well, no. The typical case of
3 finding some sort of activity on instrumentation is
4 very short duration, intermittent, and -- and pilots
5 usually refer to these brief movements of the flag as
6 flag pops.

7 For a crew or a pilot to conclude that a
8 signal is on the air and flyable would probably require
9 the flag to remain in a static condition for 10 or more
10 seconds perhaps.

11 MR. PHILLIPS: Is there any indication in
12 your mind in the transcript, the CVR transcript, to
13 indicate that the length of time these flags may or may
14 not have been in view?

15 THE WITNESS: Well, the -- the individual
16 comments, of course, do not convey much information
17 about the duration of any flag activity, but I would
18 conclude that there must have been enough absence of
19 flag for the crew to occasionally decide that the
20 system was on the air when in fact it wasn't.

21 MR. PHILLIPS: If the flag moved out of view,
22 would you have expected to see a needle deflection of
23 any sort, a fly-up or fly-down positional command?

24 THE WITNESS: Well, on an empty channel,
25 that's very statistically hard to determine. The

1 nature of the various interference or noises,
2 electrical noises, that might cause the flag to move is
3 pretty random, and, so, some of those will cause a
4 quick deflection of the needle, returning it to zero.
5 Others might deflect a needle for a short time. It is
6 quite random in the general case.

7 We have many recordings from our flight test
8 organization that shows what most people would call
9 erratic needle movement.

10 MR. PHILLIPS: Can you elaborate a little on
11 the flight test of an ILS system? What's done, and the
12 frequency, and --

13 THE WITNESS: Yes. In the U.S., instrument
14 landing systems are flight-inspected on a periodic
15 basis. The -- the period ranges from a few months to
16 about 10 months at the maximum.

17 During each of these flight tests, the
18 alignment of the localizer and the glide path, the
19 amount of needle deflections when the aircraft is off
20 the path, and the actions of the ground-based
21 monitoring system that removes the signal from service
22 when it exceeds certain standards, are all tested and
23 recordings are made. Every other flight inspection is
24 a brief one, might take 30 to 45 minutes. The
25 alternative flight inspections typically take several

1 hours.

2 MR. PHILLIPS: These flight inspections are
3 conducted with specially-instrumented aircraft or
4 ground-based or --

5 THE WITNESS: That's correct. I'm speaking
6 about the airborne testing. The aircraft are equipped
7 with quite a lot of unusual avionics and recording
8 capability that provide engineering quality
9 measurements of the signal characteristics.

10 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Could you address
11 flight testing at the Guam Airport; specifically, the
12 post-accident testing that may have been conducted on
13 the system?

14 THE WITNESS: Yes. We -- we, of course, have
15 a policy that after accidents, any ground-based
16 navigational aids that may have been involved are --
17 are flight tested as quickly as feasible after the
18 accident, and, so, of course, there was a flight test
19 of those components of the ILS that were in service at
20 the time of the accident, and everything was found
21 normal.

22 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Back to an earlier
23 discussion of the ILS system, we didn't talk about the
24 marker beacons. Would you give us a general
25 description of what a marker beacon is, and what it is

1 to an instrument approach?

2 THE WITNESS: Surely. A marker beacon is a
3 small and fairly simple ground-based transmitter system
4 that transmits an upward-directed antenna pattern
5 through which the airplane flies on the approach. It
6 causes a separate receiver in the aircraft to light a
7 particular light, different-colored lights, for the
8 different markers that are usually installed on an
9 approach.

10 The outer marker, inner marker, and middle
11 marker would be the full complement for a high-
12 precision landing system. Each one has a separate
13 light on the instrument panel. So, for about five to
14 15 seconds, as the aircraft flies through the antenna
15 pattern of each marker station, the associated light
16 will illuminate.

17 MR. PHILLIPS: Testing of the marker beacons
18 is a part of the flight check?

19 THE WITNESS: That's correct. The -- the
20 lineal distance along the flight path, the time for
21 which the light is illuminated, is tested and set to a
22 specific value.

23 MR. PHILLIPS: Is there anything to alert the
24 ground control tower or ATC specialist that a marker
25 beacon system is inoperative?

1 THE WITNESS: That varies with the
2 installation. In the general case, in the U.S., we do
3 remotely monitor the status, on-air/off-air status of -
4 - of all the components of an instrument landing
5 system.

6 Certainly for Category 2 and Category 3
7 higher-precision systems, that is a requirement. For
8 Category 1 systems, such as at Guam, it's not uncommon
9 for the outer marker and sometimes the middle marker to
10 not have remote monitoring because the absence of --
11 because of the absence of communications lines, phone
12 lines, being available to remote this indication to air
13 traffic control.

14 So, at Guam, the outer marker is not
15 monitored. The remote status is not monitored.

16 MR. PHILLIPS: Would -- would you consider an
17 inoperative marker beacon -- would the ILS be
18 operational with an inoperative marker beacon?

19 THE WITNESS: Yes, in most all cases. It
20 depends upon the design of the instrument approach
21 procedure, but in the general case, the outer marker
22 absence can be substituted with DME or radar vectoring
23 or a compass locator.

24 So, it's fairly uncommon that the absence of
25 the outer marker eliminates an instrument approach, an

1 ILS approach.

2 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Backtracking just a
3 little bit on your comments about flag pops, do you --
4 in your view, in your opinion, do you believe that
5 there's -- there's appropriate FAA guidance regarding
6 flag movement on empty channels, I guess specifically
7 in regards to the airman's information manual and
8 flight training practices?

9 THE WITNESS: Well, I think so. The -- the
10 airman information manual, of course, describes the
11 situation of navigational aids that are off the air.
12 For example, in the U.S., we have perhaps in round
13 numbers 100 instrument landing system approaches which
14 are based on a localizer-only installation. No glide
15 scope has ever been installed.

16 So, it is common that pilots have to deal
17 with either a glide scope that's been installed being
18 temporarily out of service, or a glide scope that was
19 never installed presenting an empty channel to every --
20 every airplane on approach, and therefore the aviation
21 community again, as I said earlier, relies on
22 procedural methods, such as notices to airmen and ATIS
23 announcements, to advise pilots that -- that a
24 particular navigational aid is out of service.

1 MR. PHILLIPS: If a crew was advised that the
2 glide scope was unusable, do you believe that there's
3 any duration of signal long enough to decide that the
4 approach to the glide scope would be flyable?

5 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry. Would you perhaps
6 restate that?

7 MR. PHILLIPS: In your understanding of -- of
8 the instructions to the flight crews in the airmen's
9 information manual, is there any period of time -- if
10 -- if the approach was -- the glide scope was
11 inoperative or unusable, would there be any duration of
12 flag out of view that would be considered enough to
13 consider the -- the source valid?

14 THE WITNESS: I guess I'll have to assume
15 that you mean if there's a -- if it's announced that
16 the system is --

17 MR. PHILLIPS: Yes.

18 THE WITNESS: -- unusable?

19 MR. PHILLIPS: Yes.

20 THE WITNESS: Well, if it's announced, and a
21 notice to airmen has been issued, then I think it's
22 quite clear that no period of flag activity, present or
23 absent, warrants use of the navigation signal.

24 One reason this must be the case is that even
25 though a glide scope or a localizer may be radiating

1 during periods of ground maintenance, we're required to
2 issue a notice to airmen, and during a period that may
3 last for several hours, the system may radiate signals
4 that appear normal, signals that may be flawed.

5 The various sorts of testing that must be
6 done on a routine basis for ground maintenance result
7 in signals which, from the pilot's point of view, may
8 appear to be valid. A flag would be out of view. A
9 needle would be deflecting in either normal or abnormal
10 methods or manners, however, and therefore the -- the
11 procedural method of advising the pilot not to use the
12 indications is -- is critical.

13 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Greg, could I interject a
14 question here?

15 MR. PHILLIPS: Sure.

16 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: In a situation where you
17 have a glide scope, a fully-operative ILS system, I
18 assume that the glide scope is subjected to remote
19 maintenance monitoring of some sort that you've got the
20 --

21 THE WITNESS: That's correct. I think you're
22 perhaps referring to what we call integrity monitoring.

23 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I'm dated.

24 THE WITNESS: There are -- there are three
25 types of monitoring. One is physically present at the

1 transmitter site, and that integrity monitor will turn
2 the transmitter off any time the signals exceed the
3 international standards.

4 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: And when that happens, how
5 does the FAA deal with notification of the pilot
6 community?

7 THE WITNESS: Well, we issue a NOTAM, a
8 notice to airmen, as soon as we're aware that the
9 system is off the air.

10 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: And then ATIS and ATC will
11 --

12 THE WITNESS: That's correct. Depending on
13 the airport, within a short time, -- well, air traffic
14 control will verbally announce to every arriving pilot
15 until such time as the NOTAM or the ATIS recording has
16 been made accurate.

17 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I think that Mr. Phillips'
18 questioning on this, how do you -- how do you make
19 certain that pilots are sensitive to the fact that when
20 they're getting the NOTAM, the controller clearance or
21 whatever it is, that they must ignore any flag activity
22 in the cockpit is -- is one that it certainly would be
23 interesting for the FAA and the international community
24 to pursue, how in training, in the AIM or wherever it
25 is, that -- that we -- we emphasize that enough so that

1 you at least minimize the distraction factor.

2 THE WITNESS: Certainly. The airmen's
3 information manual and -- and ground school in the
4 general case addresses these issues, although I don't
5 have any oversight knowledge about how -- how thorough
6 that is.

7 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Okay.

8 MR. PHILLIPS: As part of this flight testing
9 and ground testing of the equipment, are the FAA
10 technicians who perform these tests and review them
11 specially trained or certified?

12 THE WITNESS: Yes. The ground technicians
13 who maintain an instrument landing system must earn
14 certification credentials by attending a theory class
15 or -- or taking a bypass examination, receiving some
16 on-the-job training, and demonstrating proficiency in a
17 performance examination administered by someone who is
18 already certified, and once the credentials are earned
19 and an assignment to maintain a facility is made, then
20 the national ILS maintenance handbook defines the types
21 of tests, the periods for the tests, the frequency, in
22 general provides the guidance necessary for the
23 technician to periodically test and make a judgment
24 that the system is safe to leave in operation.

1 MR. PHILLIPS: I'd like to go back to the
2 area of needle movements and flag pops and the
3 potential for those kinds of activities.

4 Can you describe some of the signals that
5 would potentially cause the flag to move or the needle
6 to deflect, the source of the signal?

7 THE WITNESS: Okay. Certainly. I mentioned
8 that the -- that the ILS operates by transmitting two
9 tones, and the difference in the signal strength of
10 those tones is what deflects the, in the case of a
11 glide scope, the fly-up and fly-down needle.

12 So, that means that the receiver has some
13 circuits in it which are looking for those two
14 particular tones, filters that --

15 MR. PHILLIPS: Would this be a good point to
16 put up Exhibit 9-G?

17 THE WITNESS: Perhaps, --

18 MR. PHILLIPS: This was --

19 THE WITNESS: -- if that's the --

20 MR. PHILLIPS: Yeah. That's the --

21 THE WITNESS: -- diagram.

22 MR. PHILLIPS: -- schematic. For the benefit
23 of the tables, this exhibit was added this morning.
24 It's a one-page aid.

1 THE WITNESS: Yes. This is a diagram of --
2 at the most basic level of an ILS receiver on the top
3 half of the -- of the view there.

4 The filters in the top center labeled 90 and
5 150 are those filters that are looking for these two
6 particular tones that deflect the needle, and the large
7 circle labeled CDI, course deviation indicator, in the
8 case of a glide scope, for example, is the needle that
9 -- is the meter that the pilots look at, the fly-up and
10 fly-down indication.

11 So, the fly-up/fly-down needle is an
12 indication of the difference in strength of those two
13 tones, and the difference will be zero, and the needle
14 will be centered when the two tones are equal, and as I
15 mentioned earlier, we -- we go to great lengths to
16 arrange the antenna system on the ground so that those
17 signals are equal at the three-degree glide path.

18 Now the flag circuit, the other indication
19 that the pilot sees, is driven by a signal which is the
20 sum of the two circuits or the two signals. As long as
21 the 90 and 150 signals are both present at sufficient
22 strength, the flag will remain out of view.

23 So, the pilot looks at a different signal,
24 which is the fly-up/fly-down, and at a sum signal,
25 although he probably is not aware that it's a sum

1 signal, that activates the flag.

2 MR. PHILLIPS: Now I -- the localizer works
3 in the same manner as the glide scope, just turned off
4 axis?

5 THE WITNESS: That's correct. On a different
6 channel, we transmit the same two tones with an antenna
7 system that assures that the tones are equal in signal
8 strength on the runway extended center line, and that
9 drives another needle which has fly-right and fly-left
10 movement, and that needle stays centered again when the
11 two tones are equal in strength, and a separate flag
12 for the localizer is driven by the sum of those two
13 circuits or two signals.

14 MR. PHILLIPS: So, then when a flight crew
15 dials in a frequency for the instrument approach,
16 they're actually tuning two frequencies?

17 THE WITNESS: That's correct. The -- the
18 published frequency of the instrument landing system,
19 for example, 110.3, is that of the localizer. The
20 glide scope is paired in a pre-defined way so that the
21 pilot need not also specify this second frequency, but
22 two receivers are being set up on two different
23 channels by that one action of setting 110.3.

24 MR. PHILLIPS: I see on the bottom of your
25 chart, you have two -- two peaks there that say filter

1 response versus frequency. Would you like to discuss
2 that?

3 THE WITNESS: Well, yes. Because you asked
4 earlier about what sort of signals could cause the flag
5 in particular to move, we have to know a little bit
6 about the filters that drive that flag circuit.

7 The bottom figure shows in a general sense
8 how the output of the filters varies for a constant
9 input signal of differing frequencies. To use my two
10 notes on a piano analogy, if you were to play five or
11 six notes on the piano centered around the 90 hertz
12 frequency, only the one that corresponded to 90 would
13 produce, say, a one-volt output of the filter, and as
14 you played other notes at the same level of volume,
15 because they're not at 90 hertz, not at the center of
16 that frequency response for the filter, less and less
17 of the equal -- equal amplitude input signal would be
18 output.

19 So, as long as the ground station transmits
20 only 90 and only 150 signals, these filters, the 90 and
21 150 filters that feed the fly-up and fly-down needle
22 and the flag circuits, output equal amplitude signals
23 when the airplane is on course and on path.

24 If the channel were empty, no ground station
25 transmitting, no intended ground station, and some

1 other signal, for example, a two-way radio with someone
2 speaking on it, should somehow get through the
3 frequency-determining circuits, then those portions of
4 the signal that contain 90 and 150 tones, those
5 portions of the voice, for example, or a music program
6 would still get through those filters and could cause
7 the -- the two needles, the sum and difference needles,
8 to deflect in brief ways.

9 My voice, for example, contains 90 and 150
10 hertz components. Music contains frequencies in those
11 ranges. So, depending on the shape of the filters
12 response, which varies from receiver to receiver and
13 from manufacturer to manufacturer, the flag and cross-
14 blender circuits would see varying amounts of
15 intermittent deflections, depending on the content of
16 this spurious signal. As long as it contains 90 and
17 150 components or frequencies close to them, there's a
18 potential that the needles will deflect.

19 MR. PHILLIPS: So, then would the -- using
20 that discussion, would the most effective filter be one
21 that had the steepest slope about 90 and 150 hertz
22 points?

23 THE WITNESS: Yes. When -- when -- when you
24 build the filter for any purpose, you want it to be as
25 selective as possible or as reasonable. The two

1 general curves that I've drawn there are somewhat
2 typical. As -- as technology improves and costs of
3 circuits get lower, it's more common to see narrower
4 and narrower response curves. So that only frequencies
5 very close to 90 and very close to 150 get through to
6 the sum and difference indicators.

7 MR. PHILLIPS: Then would the effect of this
8 be fewer erratic needle movements and flag movements?

9 THE WITNESS: That's -- that's correct. In
10 the general sense, the -- the newer the receiver, the
11 sharper the filters, the less often a pilot would see
12 short duration flag pops and needle movements from an
13 empty channel.

14 MR. PHILLIPS: Assuming we had an empty
15 channel, if we had an intermittent flag, what would the
16 needle be doing or what -- what would you expect it to
17 be doing?

18 THE WITNESS: Well, for the flag to move,
19 that means that the sum of the output of the two
20 filters has to exceed some threshold that's been
21 previously set.

22 The flag, of course, cannot tell whether the
23 output from the 90 filter or the 150 filter or both are
24 contributing to the signal that moves the flag. So,
25 it's not possible to say in the general case whether

1 the CDI will stay centered in the case of equal amounts
2 of 90 and 150 or deflect up or down or right or left.

3 If the external undesired signal~~aw~~ composed
4 of music, for example, the base notes in the music
5 would vary. They wouldn't always be 90 or 150, and
6 therefore if there were enough signal getting through
7 the filters to move the flag, sometimes the needle
8 would deflect up or right, sometimes it would deflect
9 down or left. It's just very difficult to say.

10 But in the general case, it's random because
11 voice and music and most signals that are transmitted
12 by radio systems do not have 90 and 150 as an intended
13 information source, and therefore those components that
14 happen to be at 90 and 150 are time-variant.

15 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Could I interject a
16 question here? If it's possible, could you
17 characterize the relative sophistication or modern --
18 how modern the -- the receiver in KAL-801 was in terms
19 of the narrowness of peaks?

20 THE WITNESS: Yes. I would -- I believe -- I
21 would say that the KAL receiver was fairly typical for
22 recent receivers. There are newer and sharper filtered
23 receivers available, but it is -- the filter response
24 characteristics of that receiver are pretty common.
25 Quite a few other models from various manufacturers

1 have similar characteristics.

2 The shape of those filters is defined by
3 something called Q, a quality factor, and to get a
4 high-quality factor in a very narrow filter shape takes
5 some more components or some software in the general
6 case. Most of the manufacturers use pretty similar
7 techniques.

8 As the receiver model generations change over
9 time, the filters typically get narrower, just because
10 it's convenient and cost-effective to make them so, but
11 there are many receivers in service, like the KAL
12 receivers.

13 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. One step back here in
14 your description of the deflection without an intended
15 signal, would we need a fairly constant tone then,
16 either a 90 or a 150 hertz range, to cause a steady
17 needle deflection in the absence of a normal glide
18 scope.

19 THE WITNESS: Yes. Whatever type of signal
20 gets through those filters, it would have to have --
21 the amount that got through the 90 filter and the
22 amount that got through the 150 filter would have to be
23 fairly constant, so that the difference between the two
24 is constant, and the needle would deflect to a
25 consistent value.

1 MR. PHILLIPS: In looking at your example of
2 filter response versus frequency on the bottom of the
3 chart, it would appear that approximately halfway in
4 between the 90 and 150 hertz frequencies, at about 120
5 hertz, the filters would be the least selective, is
6 that true?

7 THE WITNESS: Yes, that's correct. Where
8 those two responses cross, which can be 120 or 122, it
9 varies a little with the model number, but it's
10 approximately 120, a single tone of that fixed value
11 would get through the filters equally well and would
12 result in, if it were strong enough, a centered needle.

13 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. That leads us to a
14 discussion regarding some post-accident testing
15 conducted by Korean Air Lines.

16 Have you been briefed, and are you aware of
17 those tests and results?

18 THE WITNESS: Yes, I have.

19 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Would you like to
20 summarize those or would you like me to?

21 THE WITNESS: I'll take a crack at it.

22 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay.

23 THE WITNESS: The Korean Air Lines test
24 basically said what -- what type of signal could cause
25 the flag to disappear from view and cause the CDI to

1 remain basically centered, and -- and since all of us
2 in the business are aware of these filter shapes, as
3 you pointed out, if you had a signal on channel that
4 had in this case 120 hertz modulation, a single tone,
5 it wasn't an ILS signal but it was some other signal,
6 and if that tone were strong enough, you notice that
7 the response of the filters at 120 is rather low, but
8 if the strength of the 120 signal were strong enough,
9 the music were strong enough, the voice were strong
10 enough, for example, then the signal that gets through
11 both filters and is summed in the flag circuit might be
12 sufficient to cause the flag to move.

13 So, they bench tested such a scenario, a
14 signal generator with modulation of a 120 hertz, quite
15 strong, roughly twice as strong as the typical glide
16 scope 90 and 150 tones, and -- and found that on a
17 variety of receivers, they were able to cause the flag
18 to disappear from view.

19 Because the filters have a roughly equal
20 response at 120, when the flag disappeared from view,
21 the -- the cross pointer fly-up/fly-down indication was
22 roughly centered, and it would vary from receiver to
23 receiver because the filters are not identical at 120
24 in every case, but over a wide range of manufacturing
25 choices, most of the receivers have an equal response

1 at approximately 120.

2 So, -- so, they found out of six different
3 models of receivers from several different
4 manufacturers, four of them, those with the broader
5 filter characteristics, would allow the flag to
6 disappear from view, and two of them with narrower
7 filters left the flag in view.

8 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Any indication of how long
9 that might be -- disappear from view than the -- than
10 the less-precise ones?

11 THE WITNESS: Well, of course, their tests
12 were static with a continuous signal from a test
13 generator, just to show that the receivers would indeed
14 respond if such a channel -- such a signal were on
15 channel. So, these were -- so far, I've described just
16 bench tests.

17 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I assume we're getting to
18 that.

19 MR. PHILLIPS: Yeah. Do these results
20 surprise you in any way? Are they what you would
21 expect?

22 THE WITNESS: They're what I would expect,
23 given the nature of receiver design.

24 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Based on -- on these
25 tests and -- and what you've seen and the testimony

1 this week or what you've heard, do you believe that the
2 warning flags are adequate to protect from interference
3 or -- or spurious movement?

4 THE WITNESS: Well, no. This -- this type of
5 circuit is intended to warn of failures in the ground
6 ILS station or -- and in the receiver and -- and does
7 not address other types of signals which may have 90
8 and 150 components.

9 Obviously any type of signal that's on
10 channel, instead of intended ILS station, if it has the
11 right characteristics in the audio, music and voice and
12 so on, this type of flag circuit, which is used
13 extensively, cannot discern the difference between the
14 intended ILS signal and an extraneous one that has the
15 right characteristics that last long enough.

16 MR. PHILLIPS: Along those lines, at an
17 instrument landing system location, how do we design or
18 how does the FAA protect the local environment so that
19 those tones and frequencies are predominant?

20 THE WITNESS: Well, the Federal
21 Communications Commission, which, of course, manages
22 the spectrum in the U.S., has granted to the FAA the
23 management of those bands of spectrum that -- on which
24 the ILS operates.

1 So, in the general case, of course, we assign
2 instrument landing systems so that any two which are on
3 the same channel are sufficiently far apart that a
4 single aircraft cannot receive two of them at one time.

5 As far as out-of-band signals go, such as
6 paging transmitters and all sorts of personal
7 communications devices, any time someone is going to
8 construct a station within about four miles of an
9 airport, we have a requirement that they notify us and
10 obtain approval for installation of those stations.

11 In my region, for example, we see about 30 of
12 these applications a week, and each one is examined for
13 its signal strength, its frequency, its potential to
14 affect radar systems, microwave systems, instrument
15 landing systems, and so on.

16 So, in that sense, we have a regulatory
17 control over how close and what nature of transmitters
18 are installed close to an airport. So, as long as all
19 of these emitters operate in the way they are intended,
20 the -- the frequency band can be kept clear of non-ILS
21 signals.

22 MR. PHILLIPS: You noted that in the way they
23 were intended. Does that imply that there's a
24 possibility that an unintended operation could have an
25 effect?

1 THE WITNESS: Well, surely. Just like any --
2 anything that we own, like a car or a microwave oven,
3 after some time, transmitters may degrade or fail in
4 ways that cause them to transmit on incorrect
5 frequencies or have incorrect characteristics, and when
6 that occurs, there is a potential in -- in any radio-
7 type system for other systems to be affected.

8 So, the protection of the navigation
9 frequencies for this condition is basically a reactive
10 one. There's no way to predict when to continue
11 picking on the paging folks, for example. There's no
12 way to predict when a given transmitter is going to
13 fail in such a way that it may transmit incorrectly on
14 frequencies other than is intended, and when we get
15 reports from pilots or from our flight test folks of
16 such occurrences, then we send out folks specially
17 equipped to locate those ground stations and get them
18 corrected.

19 MR. PHILLIPS: So, you're very dependent on
20 the way the system is structured today to find the
21 faults with the system?

22 THE WITNESS: That's correct. Changes in the
23 electromagnetic environment, changes in the spectrum,
24 changes in non-navigation systems on or near an airport
25 are detected in general by the users. There's no

1 present way to monitor throughout an approach, for
2 example, the -- the cleanliness of the ILS spectrum.

3 MR. PHILLIPS: Does the Guam Airport area
4 present any unique characteristics as far as ILS system
5 approaches go?

6 THE WITNESS: Well, I think not. It's
7 certainly got a lot of terrain, but we have many
8 airports with terrain. We have -- when you have high
9 terrain, you have hilltops and mountains which are very
10 advantageous for other transmitting systems. People
11 like to get their transmitters up at a high location.
12 So, it's fairly common that we will have AM and FM
13 broadcast stations and various personal radio systems
14 in and around airports and on high locations.

15 MR. PHILLIPS: There's a military base on the
16 other end of the island at Guam, which operates an ILS
17 system that's approximately aligned with the Runway 6
18 Left system at Agana.

19 Would you expect that to have any effect on
20 the Agana, Guam, approach?

21 THE WITNESS: No. The -- the two ILSs that
22 you speak of, the one at International and the one at
23 the Air Force base, are, of course, on different
24 channels because of the spectrum management activity
25 that I spoke of earlier.

1 One of the components of assigning
2 frequencies for ILSs is to assure that nearby ILSs are
3 sufficiently apart on the radio dials, sufficiently
4 apart in frequency, that common receivers can easily
5 separate the two.

6 MR. PHILLIPS: Does the FAA maintain any kind
7 of a database relative to interference or spurious
8 signal cause and effect?

9 THE WITNESS: Yes. I'm a little hesitant
10 about database. We have a logging system and a
11 reporting system for interference cases, which may
12 appear in some cases to look like a database, yes.

13 MR. PHILLIPS: Okay. Just a few closing
14 comments here. I would be interested in your comments
15 about future avionic systems designs relative to ILS
16 systems, and in particular, the proliferation of
17 electronic cockpit displays and the potential effects
18 on the ILS systems navigation units.

19 Do you see a trend toward improving the
20 margin of safety with the newer avionics versus the
21 older designs?

22 THE WITNESS: Well, yes. As mentioned
23 earlier, it is increasingly easier and less expensive
24 to produce better and better receivers. We've all seen
25 how electronic systems continue to get cheaper in cost

1 and generally have better and better performance.

2 So, receivers in general aboard aircraft are
3 increasingly capable, and -- and now we are seeing a
4 single box that has microwave landing system,
5 instrument landing system, and global positioning
6 system receivers all in the same space that a single
7 receiver used to occupy.

8 Increasingly, with more and more software-
9 based systems, the amount of hardware required is less.

10 This means that the receiver itself has less
11 complexity, less potential for failure and so on.

12 On the other hand, the software has the
13 potential for failure, and, so, software quality
14 assurance is becoming a very large component of
15 receiver design.

16 The displays in aircraft are becoming more
17 and more cathode ray tube and flat panel-based. These
18 displays have a lot of electronics to drive them, and
19 any electronics has a potential for generating signals.

20 So, there's a corresponding increase in the amount of
21 testing to ensure that on-board systems don't affect
22 on-board receivers.

23 So, the standards bodies have been adding
24 more and more tests for -- to ensure compliance that
25 the signals emitted by circuits aboard the aircraft are

1 not affecting aircraft receivers.

2 MR. PHILLIPS: And as a final question, are
3 there active working groups in the aviation community
4 looking at the issues of interference, spurious
5 signals, and ILS system improvements?

6 THE WITNESS: Yes. Most aviation authorities
7 have their own. For example, FAA has several, and I
8 serve on a couple international committees which are
9 editing and improving, updating ICAO and X-10, the
10 document used worldwide for ground and airborne testing
11 of nav aids and so on.

12 In general, to keep up with the changing
13 environment that receivers operate in, higher and
14 higher power broadcast stations and so on have resulted
15 in a requirement, for example, starting very soon, that
16 aircraft operating in international environments have
17 to have a new receiver that's more immune to these off-
18 channel signals.

19 MR. PHILLIPS: Do you expect in the future to
20 see ILS systems replaced with another precision landing
21 system?

22 THE WITNESS: Great question.

23 MR. PHILLIPS: My last one.

24 THE WITNESS: Certainly that is the general
25 goal of most aviation authorities, is to migrate to

1 satellite-based systems. However, there's a large
2 portion of the avionics community that feels that at
3 least as a back-up system, some small portion of the
4 existing instrument landing system installation should
5 be kept. So, I believe the technology will support
6 moving to satellite systems.

7 MR. PHILLIPS: Thank you. That's all I have.

8 THE WITNESS: You're welcome.

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: That's interesting. It's
10 possible we'll get through the whole morning without
11 talking about MLS.

12 I'd like to just make a comment and an
13 observation here for those in the audience, and that is
14 both at the NTSB and the FAA, we have what are called
15 national resource specialists, and -- and these are
16 people who, because of exceptional qualifications and
17 international reputations, are designated to operate in
18 certain areas.

19 It turns out that both Mr. Spohnheimer and
20 Mr. Phillips are national resource specialists, and I
21 think that the exchange that we've just witnessed is
22 evidence of why they are. That really was
23 extraordinarily interesting and informative.

24 Thanks to both of you.

1 I would now say to all of us here concerned
2 that we would -- we would like to keep things moving
3 along. So, let us all of us keep in mind that which
4 has been said and try to avoid redundancy in our
5 questions or going on longer than is necessary.

6 KCAB?

7 MR. LEE: Thank you, Chairman.

8 Mr. Phillips put special technical questions,
9 and Mr. Spohnheimer gave us excellent answers, and I'd
10 like to take this opportunity to appreciate both of you
11 gentlemen.

12 Just one thing. Let me just double check.
13 The KAL accident, the location was, as you know, --

14 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I thought he was so good
15 that he'd be able to operate without one. Go ahead.

16 MR. LEE: The location of the KAL accident is
17 Nimitt Hill, as you know. There are antennas and many
18 other radio facilities located also in that area.

19 Given that, do you think in your personal
20 view from the vantage point of a specialist, do you
21 think all those radio facilities had any effect on the
22 accident?

23 THE WITNESS: Statistically, I think it is
24 unlikely, but it is very difficult to say with any
25 certainty without some testing, and -- and even so, the

1 nature of spurious signals and the failure modes that
2 produce them means that as antenna systems change and
3 deteriorate, the conditions change.

4 Certainly we have -- most airports are
5 challenged with the same sorts of problems. I would
6 offer in general that -- that I probably am aware of
7 five or 10 cases in a given year of interference to an
8 instrument landing system in the case of several
9 hundred ILSs.

10 So, the occurrence is not rare, but it's
11 perhaps in the one to five percent range.

12 MR. LEE: Thank you very much. That's all.

13 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Boeing Company?

14 MR. DARCEY: We have no questions, Mr.
15 Chairman.

16 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Barton?

17 MR. EDWARD MONTGOMERY: No questions, Mr.
18 Chairman.

19 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Korean Air?

20 CAPTAIN KIM: Yes, sir. We do have a
21 question.

22 Not to delay the process, but would you
23 please tell us if FAA ran any kind of testing on the
24 localizer signal, interruptions or deviations, as well
25 as the Korean Air-run glide scope testing, bench

1 testing of similar nature to the localizers?

2 THE WITNESS: I'm not aware of any bench
3 testing on localizer receivers associated with this
4 accident. As I did mention, we -- we flight tested the
5 localizer in the day or two following the accident.

6 CAPTAIN KIM: Right. The question is
7 referring not to flight testing but bench testing with
8 similar set-up to verify the results as Korean Air did.

9 THE WITNESS: No, I'm not aware of any
10 testing. I would expect the results to be similar,
11 however, that -- that one could inject signals that
12 would cause the flag to move.

13 CAPTAIN KIM: Okay. Thank you very much.

14 May I ask you one more question? So, are
15 there any plans underway to continue testing at Guam,
16 in specific to find out if there are any more things to
17 be discovered regarding this accident?

18 THE WITNESS: I'm not aware of explicit
19 plans, but there has -- I have been a participant in
20 some discussions about the nature of ways we might test
21 the Guam environment more fully.

22 I did request an extra airborne test just
23 recently to make some recordings of the ILS with the
24 glide scope off the air. That was done within the past
25 week. It took perhaps 45 minutes. So, it is only a

1 very short look at the nature of the spectrum at Guam
2 with the glide scope off the air. Nothing was found on
3 that particular check, although it was a very short
4 one.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I think Mr. Phillips might
6 supplement that answer.

7 MR. PHILLIPS: Yes. I'd like to comment on
8 that. The systems group has had discussions concerning
9 plans, potential plans for additional site testing at
10 Guam in an attempt to identify potential signal
11 sources.

12 One of the issues you may be aware of is that
13 after the accident, there was a typhoon passed through
14 the island that did considerable damage to the antennas
15 and transmitting system there.

16 So, we believe that the environment at Guam
17 today is different than at the time of the accident,
18 but nevertheless we intend to -- to set up a plan to go
19 take a look for -- for potential spurious signals. So,
20 that's an activity that we'll be discussing in the
21 systems group over the next couple of months.

22 CAPTAIN KIM: I'm sorry to delay, but we have
23 one more question, and we have about 30 seconds before
24 we ask this question, Mr. Chairman.

1 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Why don't we go to the
2 other parties, and then we'll come back to you.

3 CAPTAIN KIM: I apologize. Thank you.

4 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: NATCA?

5 MR. MOTE: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. Just a
6 very brief question.

7 Sir, do you have any opinion as to the -- any
8 particular technical difficulties, and just in very
9 general terms, the cost of co-locating DME facilities
10 with the ILS transmitters?

11 THE WITNESS: Yes. The cost of installation
12 is quite minor, perhaps \$10,000, if there's an existing
13 building with enough room. The equipment, DME
14 equipment, would be perhaps \$100,000.

15 MR. MOTE: And are there any particular
16 technical considerations regarding such an
17 installation?

18 THE WITNESS: Well, there are many, but none
19 particularly challenging. We have many installations
20 with localizer and DME co-located.

21 MR. MOTE: Thank you very much, sir. No
22 further questions.

23 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Steve, you ready?

24 CAPTAIN KIM: Yes, sir. We're prepared at
25 this time. I understand there's not conclusive

1 evidence to continue further testing of the equipment.

2 In particular to the Model 51RV-5B, are there
3 any plans underway to improve the safety performance of
4 this equipment in particular?

5 THE WITNESS: I'm not aware of any, but I
6 haven't spoken to the manufacturer recently either.

7 CAPTAIN KIM: But nothing will be initiated
8 from the FAA's part to mandate any kind of further
9 improvements on that model?

10 THE WITNESS: I don't know how to answer
11 that. I -- the avionics group, which happens to be
12 located in Seattle but a different part of the agency
13 than myself, would -- would have to initiate some
14 dialogue to -- to promote such a change.

15 I take it you mean about the flag circuits?

16 CAPTAIN KIM: Yes, sir. You just described
17 the process you would -- that's how you would go about
18 it, but are there -- do you have specific plans at this
19 point to initiate or mandate specific improvements to
20 that model by the FAA?

21 THE WITNESS: I know of none.

22 CAPTAIN KIM: Thank you very much.

23 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Government of Guam?

24 MR. DERVISH: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. No
25 questions.

1 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Donner?

2 MR. DONNER: No questions, Mr. Chairman.

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Feith?

4 MR. FEITH: No questions, sir.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Montg~~em~~y?

6 MR. MONTY MONTGOMERY: Thank you, Mr.

7 Chairman. I have just a couple short ones.

8 Mr. Spohnheimer, for the benefit of those of
9 us who are not as technical as our national resource
10 specialists, when we talk about injecting signals into
11 the -- the device to see its response to a 120 hertz, I
12 -- I -- I hear you say things like you just somehow
13 squirt base band information in the system, and it
14 responds in a way that's -- that's unsatisfactory.

15 However, in reading the report here, I find
16 that they actually put this on top of an 88. -- 83.75
17 megahertz carrier in one instance and a 355 megahertz
18 carrier in another instance. In other words, it takes
19 a special way of doing this in order to get those base
20 band frequencies in there, is that correct?

21 THE WITNESS: That's correct. The base band
22 frequencies, the tones that we've been speaking about,
23 are -- are called the modulation, and the carrier is
24 the VHF or UHF signal that a pilot would tune a control
25 head to.

1 So, in all cases, when I spoke of a ~~sign~~
2 generator, that was referring to a piece of laboratory
3 equipment that could both generate the very high
4 frequency signal, the numbers you're referring to, and
5 add the tones to that signal.

6 MR. MONTY MONTGOMERY: So, if I walked up to
7 this piece of equipment and played my radio real loud
8 at a 120 hertz, it's not going to have any effect?

9 THE WITNESS: That's correct. I'm sorry if I
10 left you that impression. The circuits that are
11 sensitive to audio tones, of course, there's no
12 microphone connected. They listen to those frequency-
13 determining circuits that I had in the block diagram,
14 and those circuits are the ones that limit the incoming
15 signal to radio signals in the desired band.

16 MR. MONTY MONTGOMERY: And the modulation
17 type, is it FM or AM?

18 THE WITNESS: This is amplitude modulation.

19 MR. MONTY MONTGOMERY: AM. So, if I flew
20 over an FM station playing at 10 kazillion megawatts,
21 what effect might that have?

22 THE WITNESS: Well, unfortunately, it
23 probably would, even though the receiver is intended to
24 respond only to amplitude modulation.

1 When -- when an FM signal is strong enough,
2 it can actually affect the operation of the circuits
3 and add amplitude modulation to the signal. So, a
4 somewhat common occurrence among the interference cases
5 is an aircraft operating close to a mountaintop-located
6 FM transmitter.

7 So, the AM receiver is not immune to FM and
8 vice versa.

9 MR. MONTY MONTGOMERY: Okay. Thank you very
10 much. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

11 MR. SCHLEEDE: Yes, Mr. Spohnheimer, I just
12 wanted to follow up on one area you mentioned about the
13 possibility of doing some testing at Guam to look for
14 some problems.

15 Do you have any recommendations for us
16 regarding our investigation whether we should be doing
17 additional testing or the FAA should be doing
18 additional testing at Guam?

19 THE WITNESS: Well, my view is that the FAA
20 should be involved and perhaps has an incumbent
21 responsibility to do something out of the ordinary to
22 assure that there are no -- no extraneous signals
23 affecting ILS.

24 The difficulty with all of this testing is
25 that if -- if an extraneous signal is due to another

1 user or to a degraded transmitter of some sort, they're
2 seldom continuous. They're usually intermittent, and
3 sometimes it takes a very long time to locate something
4 that's clearly been reported.

5 It's like proving a negative. You can -- you
6 can flight test it for a week or two weeks, and if you
7 haven't found anything, you can't say that it didn't
8 exist. Obviously if you find something right away,
9 then you're done, and you can go fix it.

10 So, I think it would be reasonable to -- to
11 define a -- a short test program that had a definite
12 end to it that made a diligent effort to confirm that
13 the spectrum is clear in the area of the approach.

14 MR. SCHLEEDE: And would the -- would the
15 pilots that fly in there certainly play a factor in
16 reporting outages or -- I'm sorry, not outages,
17 spurious signals?

18 THE WITNESS: Yes, they would. The sort of
19 thing that an engineer would probably do is -- is haul
20 some test equipment out to the area and set it up with
21 a computer so that it logs the conditions automatically
22 every so many minutes for -- for some hours or days, so
23 that we have actual measurements using lab-type
24 equipment as opposed to user complaints.

1 But if there were approaches being flown at
2 the time, it would be easy to add that sort of
3 information certainly.

4 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you very much.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Berman?

6 MR. BERMAN: No questions.

7 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Cariseo?

8 MR. CARISEO: No questions

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Thank you very much, sir.

10 THE WITNESS: You're welcome.

11 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: That was a very helpful
12 and impressive performance, and those of us that travel
13 a bit have -- are particularly impressed by anyone who
14 travels 40 weeks of the year, and I won't ask you about
15 your family status.

16 THE WITNESS: Thank you.

17 (Whereupon, the witness was excused.)

18 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: We have five witnesses
19 left. Three of the five, including Captain Woodburn,
20 who is the next witness, are, I think, a little unusual
21 for an NTSB hearing, but I thought that it was
22 interesting to -- to perhaps have a little wider
23 perspective on some of the issues that we consider
24 important here.

1 So, Captain Woodburn is a captain with
2 British Airways. He and I worked together on a number
3 of committees, many of which are -- are involved with
4 the CFIT issue, and I think that he can give us a
5 contribution in terms of the overall worldwide
6 implications of this kind of accident, and the same
7 will apply to Don Bateman and to Jim Terpstra.

8 Mr. Schleede?

9 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you, sir.

10 Whereupon,

11 CAPTAIN PAUL WOODBURN

12 having been first duly sworn, was called as a witness
13 herein and was examined and testified as follows:

14 TESTIMONY OF

15 CAPTAIN PAUL WOODBURN

16 BRITISH AIRWAYS

17 CHAIRMAN, ICAO, CFIT STEERING COMMITTEE

18 LONDON, ENGLAND

19 MR. SCHLEEDE: Captain Woodburn, please give
20 us your full name and business address for our record?

21 THE WITNESS: It's Captain Paul Woodburn of
22 British Airways PLC, The Compass Center, Heathrow
23 Airport, London, England.

24 MR. SCHLEEDE: And would you please, because
25 you're called here as an expert in this field, give us

1 a summary of your experience and training and education
2 that qualifies you for your current position and
3 status?

4 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir, I will. I've been 34
5 years of flying with British Airways, 25 years as a
6 captain and currently a captain on the Boeing 777.

7 I also have 23 years of flight management
8 experience, the past 12 in senior management positions.

9 I also have 0 years of other industry
10 experience having served on a number of industry
11 committees and various projects. One in particular
12 concerns this inquiry, and that is the Flight Safety
13 Foundation initiative commenced in 1992 into Controlled
14 Flight Into Terrain, CFIT.

15 I was a founding member of the original
16 steering team. I have served as a member of the CFIT
17 equipment team, and I'm now currently the chairman of
18 the steering team for the past 18 months and a member
19 of the implementation team for both CFIT and approach
20 and landing accident reduction.

21 I'm also a Fellow of the Royal Aeronautical
22 Society and a liveryman of the Guild of Air Pilots and
23 Air Navigators.

24 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you very much.

1 Dr. Brenner and Captain Misencik will
2 question.

3 DR. BRENNER: Mr. Chairman, we've asked
4 Captain Woodburn to prepare a presentation about the
5 industry efforts. With your permission, we'd like to
6 have him present that.

7 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Go ahead.

8 THE WITNESS: Mr. Chairman, ladies and
9 gentlemen, as you are expecting, I have a short
10 presentation here to explain, I think, the problem of
11 CFIT so that we can all understand it and, of course,
12 to explain the Flight Safety Foundation initiative and
13 to discuss some of the recommendations.

14 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Paul, could I just sort of
15 reiterate the reminder that the interpreters are trying
16 to follow you. So, I suspect that you're going to be
17 more easily understood by them seeing as you're
18 speaking real English, but -- but if you could sort of
19 modulate your speed, I think they'd appreciate it.

20 THE WITNESS: Okay, Mr. Chairman.

21 I start with a definition of CFIT. There is
22 no internationally-agreed definition, and the one on
23 the screen in front of you reflects the one we chose
24 for our work in the Flight Safety Foundation.

1 CFIT is when a perfectly-serviceable airplane
2 is inadvertently flown into the terrain or water.

3 Can I have the next slide, please? Here you
4 can see some statistics on controlled flight into
5 terrain, and this reflects worldwide experience. On
6 the bottom axis are years from 1968 through to 1997,
7 and the vertical axis are the number of accidents
8 predominantly to jet aircraft.

9 Over on the left-hand side, you can see where
10 GPWS was introduced alongside the highest peak.

11 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Could we turn the lights
12 down a little in here so we can perhaps get a little
13 more better look at this presentation?

14 THE WITNESS: And you'll see the relatively
15 dramatic reduction thereafter.

16 Over on the right half of this particular
17 visual, you can see highlighted blocks, and I would
18 draw your attention to the two peaks that stand up
19 there, and they reflect the years of 1988 through to
20 1991, and then, of course, in 1992, there is a second
21 peak, and this appears to be a regular characteristic
22 of CFIT data.

23 There is a cyclical action here. Over three
24 to four years, there is a rise to a peak, and then it
25 diminishes. We don't necessarily know the answer for

1 it, but we believe it's related to industry awareness.

2 When it reaches a peak, there is so much
3 media attention and awareness that there is a natural,
4 I think, reaction to it and therefore could explain the
5 reduction.

6 It was that peak in 1992, the second of those
7 two peaks, which led to the Flight Safety Foundation
8 starting its initiative into CFIT and approach and
9 landing accidents.

10 Next slide, please. Here you can see which
11 sort of airplanes CFIT is attached, and you can see
12 over on the bottom left side there, there are
13 approximately five large commercial jet accidents on
14 average per year worldwide, and this was the data that
15 we had in 1992.

16 Interestingly, you can see the impact on
17 large turbo-prop, regional commuter turbo-prop,
18 business jet, and business turbo-prop aircraft, and
19 over on the right-hand side there, the business turbo-
20 prop have an average of 23 losses per year.

21 Next slide, please. This particular slide
22 just shows from 1992 in top left there the initiation
23 of the Flight Safety Foundation initiative. That led
24 to a commitment and then formation of teams. I was
25 involved from that very early stage, and then, of

1 course, the teams worked for several years, and the
2 final working group reports were delivered towards the
3 end of 1995.

4 A further year was taken refining what we now
5 know as the CFIT Education and Training Aid, and that
6 became available towards the end of 1996, being
7 distributed to industry in early 1997.

8 So, the bottom two lines there are concerned
9 with Flight Safety Foundation implementation team
10 activity which continues and the application of the
11 associated products.

12 Next slide, please. Why did we concentrate
13 our attention on CFIT particularly? This is worldwide
14 and U.S. airline fatalities classified by type of
15 accident over a 10-year period. The highest peak on
16 the left-hand side there are the fatalities due to
17 CFIT.

18 The next highest peak is the loss of control
19 in flight, and that's another story, and it's because
20 this particular peak of CFIT there that there has been
21 so much industry activity.

22 Next slide. Where does CFIT occur? The
23 simple answer is worldwide. This particular slide
24 shows western-built commercial jet transports again up
25 through to 1997. This is just a five-year period, and

1 this is the latest data and not the data that we saw
2 when we started our work. But let me talk you through
3 this.

4 First and foremost, in the middle, in Eastern
5 Europe and the Middle East, the figures of zero are not
6 really zero. They are areas where we have insufficient
7 data.

8 If I can turn now to North America, and you
9 will see an accident rate there of .03. That has been
10 pretty stable over a long period of time at that value.

11 But over there adjacent to it, you can see Europe at
12 .10. In other words, three times worse than North
13 America.

14 Coming down to Latin America, you can see the
15 figure there at 1.12, and that is a figure of 37 times
16 worse than North America. These are CFIT accident
17 rates.

18 Moving across to Africa alongside, that
19 figure there is 18 times worse, and then moving across
20 to Asia Pacific, these figures are 23 times worse or
21 down in Oceania, 11 times worse than North America.

22 They sound terrible figures, but I have to
23 say that since we started this initiative, the worst
24 figures that we saw before were in Africa, which were
25 70 times worse. So, there has been a significant

1 improvement from 70 times to 18 times, whereas in Latin
2 America, there has been no improvement whatsoever.
3 That figure is still 30 times -- 37 times as bad as
4 North America. So, this gives you a measure of the
5 size of the worldwide problem.

6 Next slide, please. If we can concentrate
7 over on that right-hand bottom corner, where it gets
8 into 1997, if we can just move it slightly, you'll see
9 here the same block diagram that we looked before, but
10 what I'd like to concentrate on is that for 1996 and
11 '97, those black boxes, they are three CFIT accidents
12 per year for '96 and '97. All of those black boxes
13 were non-precision approaches. In other words, five
14 out of six accidents in those two years were on non-
15 precision approaches.

16 Indeed, the accident data shows that the risk
17 on non-precision approaches is five times greater than
18 for conducting precision approaches.

19 Next slide, please. Here, we're looking at
20 commercial jet aircraft, again a 10-year period, from
21 '88 to '97, and this is where these accidents occur on
22 what type of approach, and there's 38 accidents here
23 worldwide. The very large blue block there, which is
24 roughly half of the cheese, half of the number, were on
25 step-down approaches.

1 The interesting thing is most of those had
2 DME available. There are only three accidents there
3 which are over at the 8:00 to 9:00 position on
4 precision approaches, and they relate to probable glide
5 scope receiver failure, probable failure of a flight
6 director to capture, and also a possible autopilot not
7 being coupled. But they're a relatively small
8 proportion of the whole, and the interesting thing is
9 that 70 percent of CFIT accidents occur on final
10 approach.

11 Non-precision approaches generally are much
12 more complex than precision approaches. For many
13 pilots, they are less familiar. They are more error-
14 prone. They require more comprehensive briefing. They
15 need particularly careful and accurate monitoring, and
16 it is possible for complex step-down procedures for
17 steps to be missed or to be taken out of step. In
18 other words, to get one step ahead of the airplane
19 could be fatal.

20 Such approaches also need much more
21 carefully-managed airplane crew and checklist
22 management, and it is a characteristic of many CFIT
23 accidents that they occur when the crew is pre-occupied
24 or distracted by other tasks.

1 Next slide, please. Where do they occur? As
2 I mentioned, 70 percent on final approach, and that
3 solid red line in the middle is where most of these
4 accidents impact the ground. They're all in line with
5 the runway, and, fortunately, as we shall see for the
6 next slide, you can see here an idealized three-degree
7 glide scope in orange, red, and then these are the
8 flight paths of many accident aircraft underneath the
9 three-degree glide scope. In other words, following
10 paralleling a three-degree glide scope but impacting
11 the ground on extended center line but short of the
12 runway.

13 The parallel to Agana, Guam, is obvious.

14 Next slide, please. The Flight Safety
15 Foundation overall goals were to reduce the CFIT
16 accident rate by 50 percent in five years and that's
17 this year.

18 The latest data that we have available shows
19 that this goal has actually been achieved, albeit the
20 data is still being assembled, and I have not got it to
21 show you today.

22 The second goal here was much more
23 challenging, and if you remember those worldwide
24 accident rates I showed you, the worst in 1992 being 70
25 times worse than North America, under this basis, we

1 would be looking for a rate no worse than twice North
2 America.

3 So, we've made some improvement but certainly
4 not to the extent of this particular goal that we set
5 ourselves.

6 Next paragraph. So, who was involved on this
7 industry participation? With the Flight Safety
8 Foundation, we brought operators, manufacturers, to
9 some extent regulatory authorities, although I have to
10 say that the degree of participation by regulatory
11 authorities has been disappointing. There was very
12 little direct involvement in any of the working groups
13 by any of the regulatory authorities worldwide.

14 However, they were kept informed of what we
15 were doing either through the Flight Safety Foundation
16 or by direct contact. Flight Safety Foundation also
17 represents training organizations, and we had good
18 participation there.

19 Wherever the Flight Safety Foundation found
20 another initiative already going, we combined
21 resources, and then everything was put under the Flight
22 Safety Foundation banner, and that brought in ICAO,
23 IATA, IFALPA, ALPA, the ATA, and again the ATC
24 authorities.

1 Like the regulatory authorities, the ATC
2 authorities were reluctant participants, too. The
3 interesting thing for all of this industry activity,
4 it's not just organizations but represents hundreds of
5 individuals who have worked with us, some of whom still
6 work with us on this particular initiative.

7 ICAO is normally recognized as a body that
8 takes five to seven years to do anything, yet it has
9 been remarkably supportive and productive to this
10 process. Since 1994, there's a lot that they've done
11 as we shall see.

12 Next slide. So, let me just recap on CFIT.
13 It is this inadvertent flight into terrain or water.
14 It does cause the greatest number of fatalities. The
15 risks on non-precision approaches are greater, and they
16 almost always involve the breakdown of crew
17 coordination and monitoring.

18 Another factor which became very strongly
19 evident in the analysis of all of this work was that
20 there is no single measure that we can take to prevent
21 CFIT. It needs a range of measures suited to a
22 particular operator and the operating environment.

23 There is no new single piece of equipment
24 that can be fitted to aircraft that will make CFIT go
25 away. Yes, it may help, but in isolation, it is not

1 the sole cure.

2 Remember also that any new equipment
3 requirement takes many years to implement across the
4 entire industry, and in many ways, it's the areas of
5 the world that have the least problem that will fit the
6 equipment first, and it's those other areas of the
7 world where the greatest problem exists that will fit
8 it last.

9 Industry must therefore take action now
10 because we can't afford to let this risk go on
11 unaddressed.

12 Next slide. This ICAO requirement becomes
13 effective on January 1st, 1999, and if you remember the
14 earlier slide in terms of small aircraft CFIT exposure,
15 this was aimed at applying GPWS-fitted to the smaller
16 airplanes.

17 You still have to remember that there are up
18 to 200 heavy jet aircraft flying in the world today
19 that have no GPWS-fitted at all, even after 20+ years
20 of requirement.

21 Next slide. The GPWS warning functions
22 described here are in effect the characteristics of a
23 Mark-2 or subsequent model of GPWS, and the effect of
24 this rather more stringent set of requirements for ICAO
25 is that the early Mark-1 GPWS installations will need

1 to be replaced by Mark-2 or better.

2 Next slide. There are a number of other
3 changes that are being pursued in terms of instructions
4 and training requirement for the avoidance of CFIT.
5 There is also the requirement being framed for a
6 company policy on the use of GPWS. Proposals in this
7 direction being very detailed, which is why I'm not
8 going through them here today, were being presented to
9 the ICAO Council only last week. We await progress
10 reports.

11 Next slide. This is a whole series of future
12 ICAO actions, and I will only mention briefly some of
13 the things associated with these headings.

14 Under the licensing and training, Annex 1,
15 the proposed changes there are mainly to do with air
16 traffic control language, skills and proficiency with
17 requirements for improvement by 2001.

18 The next one down, charting, is concerned
19 mainly with the adoption of colored terrain all minimum
20 safe altitude contour presentation on charts to improve
21 their readability and understanding by flight crew,
22 particularly in the cockpit environment at night.

23 Operation of aircraft, the third bullet down
24 there, there are a whole range of things, whether they
25 be equipment and procedures, but typical things being

1 discussed there are prohibition of the old altimeters,
2 things like three-pointer designs or fixed drum-pointer
3 design of altimeters which can easily be misread.
4 There are still many in the industry in use today.

5 Under equipment, there is a requirement, an
6 extension of requirement for ACAS, pressure altitude
7 encoding transponders, forward-looking wind shear
8 warning systems, and others.

9 Under procedures, there are new requirements
10 and new emphasis on standard operating procedures,
11 altitude awareness procedures, including the use of
12 standard or automated call-outs, guidance on the use of
13 autopilot, the incorporation of stabilized approach
14 procedures concepts, etc.

15 The next one down, instrument approach
16 procedure design, under PANS-OPS, there are particular
17 changes there applicable to non-precision approaches
18 concerning the optimum angle, and, of course, growing
19 interest in the application of vertical navigation,
20 VNAV, or FMC approaches.

21 Under air traffic services, there are new
22 requirements regarding radar vectoring to avoid GPWS
23 alerts as well as emphasizing and encouraging the
24 implementation of MSAW of which we've heard a lot on
25 this inquiry.

1 The last bullet there in terms of publishing
2 a manual on CFIT avoidance is still under
3 consideration. Further activity with ICAO concerns the
4 translation of the Flight Safety Foundation education
5 and training aid into ICAO languages, the other five
6 beyond English. We're still awaiting a time scale for
7 that availability.

8 Next slide, please. So, in summary, these
9 are the ICAO sorts of changes. There is a need to
10 train to ensure pilot response to CFIT ground proximity
11 warning systems and so on.

12 Now there are two different ways of doing
13 this. Many operators use a technique of during normal
14 proficiency checks, inserting what some call an
15 imaginary or glass mountain which generates a GPWS
16 pull-up alert unexpectedly.

17 The problem with that is that the pilots may
18 have been operating perfectly normally, safely, under
19 their proficiency check, and they then have what is a
20 rogue warning that seems to come at them with surprise.

21 That can be considered negative training because it
22 causes them to mistrust their basic normal procedures.

23 Another way of doing it is to still show how
24 ground proximity warning systems work but in a more
25 creative way. I'll describe a way that I know well

1 particularly, and I know a number of other operators
2 use it.

3 Modern simulator systems have good visual
4 displays. When operating to an airport in the
5 simulator database, under VFR good visual conditions,
6 in mountainous terrain, it is very easy to take a
7 vector that puts the airplane flying towards a
8 potential conflict with the terrain. The briefing to
9 the crew is let it happen, see what it looks like, and
10 don't do anything until the ground proximity warning
11 pull-up occurs.

12 The pilots are then left with this situation
13 of watching the ground approaching, eventually filling
14 the windshield in the visual display, and still the
15 pull-up does not occur, remembering that 15 seconds or
16 so to impact is typical of the characteristics of such
17 systems. It could be less or marginally more.

18 So, when they get to the pull-up point,
19 they're on the edge of their seats, can't stand the
20 sight of it, and then, of course, pull up, they do the
21 pull-up maneuver, and hopefully, if they've done the
22 right technique, having watched the ground approaching,
23 they will follow the required escape maneuver. They
24 then have this visual image of what it looks like to be
25 that close to terrain.

1 The next part of the exercise is to repeat it
2 all in a different area, different bit of terrain, but
3 they're now IMC. They don't see the terrain at all.
4 For you pilots out there, I can guarantee you've got
5 that visual image with you for several years after the
6 event of having done that exercise, and when you fly in
7 IMC to the pull-up point, you remember what it looked
8 like visually. You don't waste any time. You get out
9 there very quickly indeed, and it is an aggressive
10 maneuver needed. Gentle ones or time taken to say is
11 this real or false is not a luxury that we can afford.
12 Now that type of pilot teaching, I think, is very
13 powerful and much more meaningful to them.

14 So, moving on to the second bullet there in
15 terms of updating early ground proximity warning system
16 installations, I've covered that in terms of Mark-1s
17 being replaced by Mark-2 or better.

18 The third bullet is in terms of encouraging
19 development and application of enhanced GPWS. We also
20 need to provide precision approach glide slope guidance
21 whether that comes from GPS, GNSS, RNAV, and so on.

22 I think we all recognize the need to
23 eliminate the step-down non-precision approaches
24 because the accident data says we should. We also need
25 to encourage the expansion of approach radar coverage

1 with MSAW on a worldwide basis, not just in the few
2 countries that presently use it, and, of course, as we
3 saw earlier, we're fostering the equipment of smaller
4 transports with GPWS.

5 Now set against that, what actions have the
6 regulatory authorities taken? Relatively little.

7 Now let's turn to the next slide, and here
8 what I've tried to do, rather than go through a
9 detailed presentation of all of the recommendations
10 which would be beyond, I think, the scope of this
11 inquiry, what I've tried to do is to show some of the
12 applicable recommendations, and then I'll talk a little
13 bit about them.

14 Chart supply and presentation. One of the
15 recommendations was that looking at the worldwide data,
16 a factor in some of the accidents was that not all crew
17 members have charts. If they don't have charts, how
18 can they effectively monitor what's going on?

19 So, there is a requirement that all crew
20 members should have appropriate charts, and then, of
21 course, the charts themselves in terms of presentation
22 should have clear depiction of terrain and be easy to
23 read in the cockpit environment. Hence the
24 recommendation of colored contours.

1 The second bullet down in terms of approach
2 and departure briefings, again the accident record
3 shows that many of them have a failure to conduct
4 adequate either departure or approach briefings. The
5 more complex the approach, the more briefing and
6 careful rehearsal of what is needed on that approach
7 becomes necessary.

8 The third bullet down, allocation of flight
9 crew duties and the use of the monitored or, as some
10 call it, the shared approach procedure. An analysis of
11 the accident data shows quite conclusively over
12 hundreds of whole losses that they occur mainly in
13 terms of IMC or at night, and on four out of five
14 occasions, they occur when the handling pilot is the
15 captain.

16 Another piece of data is that where crew
17 coordination and monitoring is shown to be a causal
18 factor for the accident, then it is four or five to one
19 more likely to occur when it's the co-pilot monitoring
20 the captain rather than the captain monitoring the co-
21 pilot flying the approach.

22 That accident data therefore led to a
23 recommendation that suggested that for IMC and night
24 approaches, then the co-pilot should be flying the
25 approach and the captain should be monitoring, and the

1 captain takes over when visual reference has been
2 achieved for the landing.

3 Now we all accept this question of the
4 monitoring of the captain by co-pilots and so on is, I
5 think, a worldwide cultural issue. The human factors
6 experts have coined the phrase "the authority
7 gradient". It applies to all nationalities, not just
8 one particular nationality. All of us, I think, have a
9 respect for rank, authority, experience, but in
10 addition to that, there are some cultural issues, too.

11 It is more difficult for some cultures to be
12 critical of the man in charge, the captain, or woman in
13 charge than for some other cultures, and it doesn't
14 matter how much training or whatever the company
15 policies and procedures are, that has to be worked out
16 continuously to achieve the correct, I think, crew
17 integration and team effort. But all of that is part
18 of this allocation of flight crew duties.

19 One other factor, a related recommendation,
20 but I've not done it separately, is the use of the
21 autopilot. Even for non-precision approaches, and
22 probably particularly there, we've already discussed
23 that it's a more difficult sort of approach. Why not
24 use the autopilot? Because it reduces the workload.
25 The handling pilot even operating the autopilot has

1 more capacity to monitor what's going on and, I
2 believe, will lead to a safer conclusion of that
3 approach.

4 It does keep the workload well down, and I
5 think improves this crew integration and monitoring
6 enormously.

7 The last bullet is the non-precision approach
8 procedures, including the design. This is where most
9 CFIT accidents occur, and, of course, it led to the
10 recommendations to try and make precision approaches
11 more like -- or to make non-precision approaches more
12 like precision approaches, where the accident rate is
13 lower. It is the one most flight crews are performing
14 most of the time. So, let's make non-precision
15 approaches as similar as possible to precision
16 approach.

17 The accident record of decades shows that jet
18 aircraft have crashed for failure to follow stabilized
19 approach concepts. So, let's incorporate stabilized
20 approach into non-precision, which means continuous
21 descent powers rather than step-down approaches which
22 are inherently unstable.

23 It is also, as I mentioned earlier, very easy
24 to get out of step with those -- those particular
25 vertical descents flying level going to another one and

1 so on.

2 There's a recommendation, too, that the
3 construction of such approaches should be around the
4 three-degree point provided all obstacle clearance can
5 be achieved, and that one should have a final descent
6 power of at least eight to 10 miles to allow stabilized
7 conditions to be established more easily than trying to
8 do it from the final approach fix at four miles in-
9 bound.

10 I'd like to just look at a chart at the
11 moment, and this just shows a particular instrument
12 approach chart. It's an ILS or a VOR to Runway 8 in
13 Gabaroon or in Africa, and this is a particular
14 approach with similar characteristics to Guam. This
15 has a VOR DME at the final approach fix.

16 Down there in the bottom right-hand corner,
17 if we can zoom in, bottom right, that's it, just there,
18 you'll see DME distance with an altitude table, and
19 this is the sort of information that a company I know
20 which produces its own charts provides to pilots which
21 gives additional DME guidance beyond that final
22 approach fix to determine an optimum descent angle, and
23 that actually computes to a 3.1 degree angle.

24 If we now go back to the profile and we can
25 see there in the middle the GBV VOR DME at the final

1 approach fix, crossing altitude of 4,800 feet, there's
2 nothing whatever to stop anybody commencing a final
3 descent path instead of 5,300 shown some distance out.

4 It only needs to be less than two miles outside that
5 VOR DME to do a continuous descent path.

6 Indeed, you could run right around the whole
7 procedure at 5,500 and face finals at 5,500 and
8 commence descent at 2.5 miles before GBV and do a
9 continuous descent all the way in. You've observed all
10 of the limitations, but you have a more effective
11 continuous descent and stabilized approach capability.

12 Now, this chart is not ideal, but that's the
13 sort of thing that I would like to see us eventually
14 rewrite such procedures using the aids available and to
15 allow the pilot to operate the airplane in the best
16 possible way.

17 If we now just look at the planned view of
18 the chart itself, that's the upper half, again all I
19 would just draw attention to are the colored areas
20 there in light green, and the figures in there. These
21 are minimum safe altitude contours. In other words,
22 the figure you see there is a safe altitude to fly at.

23 Now that's one way of depicting contour
24 presentation rather than the terrain itself. This is,
25 after all, what the pilot wants to know. What's the

1 safe altitude I can fly at? Not necessarily read the
2 height of the ground, apply a margin, and then
3 eventually get to the figure. This is prime
4 presentation of information.

5 Next slide, please. Coming back to these
6 applicable recommendations from the CFIT education and
7 training aid, the next bullet here is altitude
8 awareness, and here, it's important that the flight
9 crew establish the applicable minimum safe altitude for
10 where the airplane is going to be and where it is.

11 They also have to bear in mind that the
12 minimum operating altitudes, when in low temperature or
13 high winds, needs to be increased, and that, I think,
14 is a correction that is not well understood worldwide
15 for international operators who may occasionally
16 operate to either very low temperature airfields or
17 indeed may experience high winds when operating at low
18 altitude.

19 Altitude awareness also includes the
20 incorporation of the 500-foot radio altitude call-out,
21 particularly on non-precision approaches. The value of
22 such a call-out, if integrated into normal operations,
23 is that it's in the vicinity of most minimum descent
24 altitudes.

1 When 500 radio goes off, if you're not close
2 to being visual with the runway, then you should be
3 getting out of there. That's the intent of that
4 particular call-out.

5 There's also a requirement here that there is
6 rather more positive cross-check of the final approach
7 fix crossing altitude before continuing the descent to
8 the runway.

9 The next bullet is radio altimetry and call-
10 outs. It is vital, the accident record shows, that we
11 have improved terrain awareness. Most of our aircraft
12 have the radio altimeter on board our aircraft, but
13 many operators don't use it for normal operations and
14 only require its use in Category 2 or 3 conditions.

15 The significance of that is that in Category
16 1 or even in VFR conditions, then one should have the
17 radio altimeter as part of the instrument scan when
18 below 2,500 feet and lower commencing the approach.
19 The intent of it is to make pilots aware that they are
20 getting close to terrain and need to be aware of it.

21 Another feature is that how do you integrate
22 it? Do you have manual pilot call-outs or, better
23 still, have automated call-outs through the ground
24 proximity warning computer? That has a number of menus
25 of call-outs, and many aircraft have them today. The

1 value of automated call-outs is that it doesn't get
2 tired, distracted or anything else. When crews can
3 forget to make the manual call-out, the automation
4 doesn't. But the important thing is to have procedures
5 associated with it, not just to have the call-outs made
6 and then ignored.

7 The next one down here is measurement and
8 evaluation of system performance. The world's airlines
9 have imperfect systems quite often to measure how their
10 aircraft are being flown, whether the standard
11 policies, procedures and so on are being observed, and
12 to what standard.

13 Here, what I am recommending and what the
14 Flight Safety Foundation recommends here is the
15 adoption of flight operations quality assurance sorts
16 of programs, the foci as we know in North America, and
17 comparable programs elsewhere.

18 A growing number of airlines are now using
19 such data which means analysis of either flight data
20 recorders, quick access recorders, enhanced pilot
21 reporting, whatever, to monitor how the aircraft are
22 being flown, and that information can be used for
23 routine engineering purposes or operational purposes.

24 Sticking with the latter, it is possible to
25 determine if limitations have been exceeded, flat-

1 limiting speeds, for instance, whether the aircraft had
2 a rushed approach. In other words, mismanaged approach
3 by the flight crew.

4 Another one is a recording of ground
5 proximity warning system alerts. There is too little
6 data being collected by most operators as to how ground
7 proximity warning systems are working on their
8 aircraft.

9 I think many of us know that accidents show
10 that pilots were ignoring the ground proximity warning
11 shouting at them when the accident occurred, and they
12 were ignoring it.

13 The big question behind that is why? Now, we
14 know that the false or nuisance activation of ground
15 proximity for some systems can be high, but there are
16 technical solutions to make them much more dependable,
17 and therefore pilots should be encouraged to believe
18 them.

19 But getting the data is half the problem.
20 When you know the problem, you can then apply
21 solutions. You can also see how flight crew responded
22 to GPWS alerts. That, of course, has benefits in terms
23 of having confidence that this safety system is
24 protecting your aircraft, but also the technique that
25 is being applied by the pilot in the recovery maneuver.

1 Again, that can be fed back into the training program
2 to refine the technique, and then by gathering the data
3 after the change, you can measure the improvement.

4 Another one is monitoring of go-arounds.
5 We've talked a little bit about that earlier in this
6 inquiry, and we believe it's important to monitor for a
7 variety of reasons. Yes, we must not discourage pilots
8 to perform go-arounds when necessary. Indeed, you must
9 positively encourage them.

10 However, you need the data for these sorts of
11 reasons. For instance, at congested airports these
12 days, aircraft are being squeezed in to maximize
13 capacity with minimum separation between airplanes. It
14 is possible that by monitoring go-around rates, you may
15 find a problem at one particular airfield. That may
16 need a discussion with air traffic control to refine
17 their procedures.

18 Another benefit could be not just the numbers
19 of go-arounds but how are they performed. We all know
20 that in the simulator on proficiency checks, pilots
21 perform the required maneuvers well. They have to.
22 They're being assessed on it, and nobody worries about
23 doing aggressive go-around maneuvers in simulators.

24 However, most pilots change when they've got
25 400 passengers sitting behind them on an aircraft, and

1 there is almost an unconscious relaxation, an attempt
2 to be somewhat smoother, gentler. The reality is you
3 do a lazy go-around by comparison with an aggressive
4 go-around, and when you are in the vicinity of low
5 minimum descent altitudes or decision heights, getting
6 close to the ground, you cannot afford that luxury.

7 So, again, if you monitor performance, you
8 can feed this thing, feed the information back into the
9 training and the education of your pilots.

10 The last one on here is the minimum safe
11 altitude warning system. I won't go into any more
12 detail on this, but there are recommendations about its
13 worldwide application. It is available in many
14 countries, as we've already heard, but it is in limited
15 use worldwide. We need to see more of it.

16 You can take the slides off now, please. In
17 conclusion, I don't have a slide for this but would
18 just like to make a few remarks.

19 In spite of the efforts of the Flight Safety
20 Foundation, the many individuals, some of whom are in
21 this room today, and in spite of what we've now
22 discovered about controlled flight into terrain
23 accidents worldwide, they still continue to occur.
24 Just ponder that. They still occur.

1 I believe that industry needs some degree of
2 compulsion to take more effective action. It's not
3 enough at the moment to have awareness and voluntary
4 action. We need the help and support from the
5 regulatory authorities to maintain the momentum of this
6 Flight Safety Foundation initiative and the work that
7 the industry has completed.

8 Remember the ICAO proposals that are being
9 worked on now need state approval. State authorities
10 will listen to their regulatory authorities. So, we
11 need the support from the regulatory authority to
12 ensure success of those ICAO proposals.

13 But that's not all. I believe all public
14 transport operators should be required to have a CFIT
15 avoidance strategy and a program with policies and
16 procedures applicable to that particular operator and
17 its operating environment, but based upon the Flight
18 Safety Foundation education and training aid.

19 It's then not enough to have policies and
20 procedures. The regulatory authorities must verify
21 that they are in place and being used.

22 Operator training programs should incorporate
23 the diverse nature and range of instrument approaches
24 that they encounter in the real world in their
25 simulators.

1 We should also recognize that continued
2 development and application of new technology and
3 equipment, both in the air and on the ground, should be
4 positively encouraged.

5 Chairman, ladies and gentlemen, thank you for
6 this presentation.

7 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Thank you very much, Paul.

8 I'd like to preempt perhaps a little bit a
9 question, but -- but I think that this issue that --
10 that you mentioned several times of participation in
11 the groups that are working on this and particularly
12 participation by regulatory and air traffic authorities
13 is extraordinarily important.

14 We basically have a situation where as far as
15 I can see, the entire rest of the industry is involved,
16 and yet the people who are essential to -- to moving
17 much of the -- of the equation here that we're talking
18 about are not involved, and I'd be interested in any
19 thoughts you might have as to, Number 1, well,
20 particularly why they may not be involved, and I
21 certainly hope that this hearing and anything that we
22 can do afterward to get them involved, we can all work
23 on.

24 So, if you have any comments on this. We
25 didn't co-conspire, by the way, on this, but -- but I

1 think we're both coming from the same place.

2 THE WITNESS: Well, thank you, Chairman.

3 Yes, it has been a difficult area. I think one
4 recognizes that not just operators but regulators have
5 also had difficulties with resources and processes of
6 change and various other internal problems.

7 It has been difficult for them to resource
8 these sorts of industry activities, but the converse of
9 that is that we found it difficult, too, but felt it
10 important enough to do it.

11 That, I think, is the -- the message that now
12 needs to get to the regulators, that the work and the
13 progress that has been made will not be maintained
14 unless they join this program.

15 I know my own regulatory authority in the
16 U.K. I have given presentations to them on this, and
17 they have been reluctant to take it on as a regulatory
18 activity.

19 Remember when I suggested that some
20 encouragement be given to it. That's one thing, but
21 verification means more work, and that maybe is what
22 they're hesitating over. But I don't think we have the
23 choice. The data shows that this is the biggest cause
24 of fatalities, and we must react to it.

1 It would be a very powerful, I think, signal
2 to the world if we could persuade, for instance, the
3 FAA, either as a recommendation of this inquiry or
4 beyond it, to come on site and to take a more active
5 role in running with the recommendations that have come
6 out of the Flight Safety Foundation.

7 There are no axes to grind here. We have a
8 shared common goal, safety.

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: My apologies to the ~~Tec~~
10 Panel for that, but I think that's an extraordinarily-
11 important message for us to get across, and proceed.

12 DR. BRENNER: Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

13 You mentioned that there's been a -- a major
14 reduction in CFIT accidents since the beginning of this
15 effort. What -- what are some factors, do you think,
16 in helping in that reduction so far?

17 THE WITNESS: I think the major factor has
18 been the increased awareness within the industry, and
19 certainly since the Flight Safety Foundation commenced
20 this initiative, there has been a lot more media
21 coverage of this activity.

22 The combination of this, I think, awareness
23 and the growing availability now of products like the
24 CFIT checklist, the various videos in both corporate
25 aviation and that comes with the education and training

1 aid, these are the sorts of things that are now being
2 more widely applied within operators.

3 But I believe a great deal more needs to be
4 done to maintain the limited improvement that we've
5 seen thus far. We'd dearly like to see this problem
6 eliminated.

7 DR. BRENNER: You mentioned the checklists,
8 the CFIT checklist. How is that used?

9 THE WITNESS: The CFIT checklist, for those
10 of you that may have seen it, is a fairly complicated
11 list of factors which enables airline management, not
12 operating flight crew members, but airline managements
13 to assess the nature of their operation and to come out
14 with a risk-degree factor at the end of it which may
15 cause them to select appropriate measures that reduce
16 that risk, various policies.

17 I mean, for instance, how one flies non-
18 precision approaches or the use of the monitored or
19 shared approach, those sorts of things. They are
20 mitigating factors against a risk of a particular type.

21 So, yes, it's a management tool, not an
22 operational tool.

23 DR. BRENNER: Would -- would pilots use it as
24 well?

1 THE WITNESS: I don't believe they would find
2 it very user-friendly, no. I think most pilots want
3 things much shorter, sharper, punchier, whatever, and
4 we already have difficulty with long checklists in
5 airplanes now.

6 The CFIT checklist is quite complex and
7 really is not a factor for them because most flight
8 crew are not the determinants of operating policies and
9 procedures. That's the airline management's.

10 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Excuse me, Malcolm. This
11 is aimed -- the CFIT checklist is aimed at the issue
12 that we're all talking more and more about, and that is
13 that safety is not just the pilot ran the airplane into
14 the water or into the mountain. Safety is ultimately
15 the responsibility of corporate management in whatever
16 company it is, and that this starts at the top of the
17 management.

18 So, this checklist, while complex, is aimed
19 at what the entire spectrum of the company is doing in
20 terms of its policies in order to prevent CFIT. It's
21 aimed at the company and not just at the operations
22 people, but in the -- at the entire company.

23 THE WITNESS: If I might diverge very
24 slightly, Chairman, there is some work going on in
25 another country, which is trying to enhance what I

1 would call awareness of safety management systems, and
2 there, they have already discovered that the most
3 important factor on the safety performance of any
4 organization is its management culture.

5 Have the right management culture, safety in
6 terms of both culture and performance will result. So,
7 it's just really emphasizing the point that you made
8 that safety starts from the top, doesn't stop there.
9 It runs right down through the organization from top to
10 bottom and all the way back up again. It has to be,
11 you know, staffed. It has to be resourced. It has to
12 have an organizational commitment to safety in
13 everything that that management organization does.

14 DR. BRENNER: Captain, in the case of the
15 accident flight, would the checklist have highlighted
16 certain areas of risk that might have developed more
17 attention?

18 THE WITNESS: I believe that the use of the
19 checklist will highlight to management, yes, that
20 certain types of operation do have higher risks and
21 that there are policies and procedures that could
22 reduce that risk when applied. But as I say, it is for
23 managements and not the operating crew.

24 DR. BRENNER: The -- you mentioned that the
25 CFIT training aid was sent out last year. How has the

1 response been from the international community?

2 THE WITNESS: That is an interesting subject.

3 We know that more than 2,000 copies of the education
4 and training aid have been distributed worldwide
5 through the manufacturers principally and through some
6 training organizations and other industry bodies.

7 The difficult thing is we now have to ~~get~~
8 data as to what airlines have done with it. We have no
9 established communication at the present to measure
10 that implementation progress.

11 So, the Flight Safety Foundation is
12 considering sending out some form of small
13 questionnaire, quite deliberately not aimed at where
14 the CFIT education and training aid was sent. If it
15 went to the VP, Flight Operations, and he did nothing
16 with it, then it's no good sending the questionnaire to
17 that particular individual.

18 What we'd like to do is to send the
19 questionnaire to some lower point in the organization,
20 for instance, into the training management arena, and
21 also to the flight crew community themselves through
22 the pilot associations.

23 We then have a measure of how effective
24 changes might have been within the organization and the
25 degree of communication on CFIT that's going on from

1 top to bottom.

2 Now that data-gathering is due to commence
3 later this year, and we will be eventually reporting on
4 what we find to the Flight Safety Foundation, and we
5 hope that that information can be used to both
6 encourage the airlines that have started doing
7 something and, I hope, to prompt those airlines that
8 have done very little so far to start doing something
9 quickly.

10 DR. BRENNER: How many airlines are using
11 monitored approaches?

12 THE WITNESS: I don't have an exact number.
13 All I can say is that there are a large number and a
14 growing number now using the monitored approach, if not
15 for all of their operations, at least for part of their
16 operations.

17 The name of it may vary from one airline to
18 another. I've already used the term "shared approach".

19 Some airlines use the term "low-visibility procedures
20 approach". So, they may have a different set of
21 procedures for Category 2 and 3 that may be different
22 to the procedures used for Category 1 or VFR flying.

23 There are also a number of military forces in
24 the world that use it, too, particularly in the
25 transport arena. So, yes, it's being more recognized

1 and steadily growing.

2 DR. BRENNER: Among airlines that have
3 hesitated to use this approach or decided not to or are
4 considering it, what are some of the concerns that are
5 raised?

6 THE WITNESS: There is a difficulty when an
7 airline has an established operation that may have
8 existed for many years, and pilots are resistant to
9 change. It's remarkable how pilots can adapt to new
10 concepts with a new airplane that they're required to
11 fly but are remarkably resistant to changes of policies
12 and procedures because they defend that which they know
13 best.

14 So, airline managements whowish to make a
15 change have a fairly uphill education task as well as a
16 redefinition of policies and procedures to support the
17 change.

18 It then doesn't happen overnight. I know
19 from my own personal experience that it can take many
20 years before these sorts of changes of concept can be
21 fully accepted. But you only have to look at that
22 accident data, and it's difficult to refute it.

23 There is a better way of flying airplanes.
24 We know that. The data supports it.

1 DR. BRENNER: How many airlines have training
2 for aggressive response to a GPWS warning?

3 THE WITNESS: Well, all airlines would claim
4 to have it. I think only those airlines that have some
5 form of system to measure performance in the way I was
6 describing earlier know whether their pilots are
7 actually doing it.

8 Simulator performance is not enough. You
9 have to see what they're doing on the real airplane.
10 I don't have figures of how many airlines are doing
11 aggressive. I just know that that is the general
12 policy, but few airlines have the means to ensure that
13 it's being done.

14 DR. BRENNER: Yesterday, we spoke about
15 considerations of tracking missed approach data. Do
16 you have any -- any thoughts on that, on any value
17 towards this type of effort?

18 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry. Could you redefine
19 that question a little?

20 DR. BRENNER: I believe keeping airline
21 records on go-arounds.

22 THE WITNESS: Oh, yes. We -- we keep the
23 records. We feed the information back, and I think
24 operators generally in being encouraged to keep the
25 record should do that.

1 As I indicated, it does identify problem
2 airfields with other causes for go-arounds, but the
3 important thing is that we use it for beneficial
4 purposes in terms of encouragement and also the correct
5 performance of the go-around itself.

6 It is essential that the aggressive maneuver
7 for a go-around is performed when at or near the
8 minimum descent altitude or decision height, but when
9 you are well away from it and commencing a go-around
10 from more than a thousand feet away from such low
11 altitudes, could be more gentle, and that may be an
12 airline policy choice, but again have the data, use it,
13 refine it, and then have confidence in how your pilots
14 will perform.

15 DR. BRENNER: And we spoke yesterday about
16 MSAW. Are there international standards or
17 requirements?

18 THE WITNESS: There are none yet, and that is
19 the work I referred to earlier in terms of ICAO. Have
20 a proposal to mandate it at some point in the future.

21 However, we know that for recent radar
22 equipment installed worldwide, most of them have the
23 MSAW capability. Other than a few states, like North
24 America, like Israel or Turkey or one or two other
25 places in the world, most do not have them

1 commissioned. They do not have them tailored to the
2 installation.

3 Air traffic controllers are not trained in
4 its use, and indeed there is some degree of air traffic
5 resistance because, remember, MSAW, an alert, could
6 indicate that the air traffic controller made a
7 mistake, and there are some therefore cultural or
8 punishment issues associated with that alert, which are
9 natural inhibitors to adoption.

10 But all of those issues have to be worked
11 through to make sure that we do have the safety benefit
12 that is available but being unused. In other words,
13 the cost of actually putting it in place is minimal.
14 Let's use it.

15 DR. BRENNER: Is there CFIT prevention
16 training for air traffic controllers?

17 THE WITNESS: There isn't, but there should
18 be, and that was one of the recommendations that came
19 out of the air traffic control procedures and ground
20 equipment working group report, and the sort of things
21 that need to be done are training to understand the
22 capabilities and requirements of aircraft.

23 I think many of us take that for granted, but
24 I believe air traffic controllers need to have more
25 knowledge in that area. They need to understand the

1 stabilized approach procedure and what it means to us
2 as pilots when they ask us to fly at certain speeds to
3 certain short distances from touchdown.

4 They need to improve their awareness of GPWS
5 performance and radar vectoring in the vicinity of
6 terrain. They also, I think, need to have education in
7 terms of operation at low temperatures or high winds
8 when operating at low altitude in the vicinity of
9 terrain.

10 Many states have no procedures for such --
11 for such conditions. Others have procedures where air
12 traffic control will modify clearances. Other states
13 have procedures where they expect pilots to make the
14 corrections and then notify air traffic of such
15 corrections. There is no uniform standard, but there
16 should be.

17 Those are the sorts of areas that I would see
18 education needed.

19 DR. BRENNER: The NTSB has recommended to the
20 FAA to make CFIT training mandatory for airline pilots,
21 like wind shear -- training in wind shear avoidance.
22 Is this a positive step?

23 THE WITNESS: That's a positive step, but as
24 we have seen, and I -- as I have tried to reiterate,
25 there is no single step that stops CFIT. It is a

1 collection of measures.

2 CFIT education and mandating of it is just
3 one element of those measures. Another piece of
4 equipment on the airplane is not the only measure
5 needed. It is a step in the right direction.

6 DR. BRENNER: Are there some measures that
7 can be implemented immediately?

8 THE WITNESS: Well, interestingly, most of
9 those things I talked about in terms of applicable
10 areas of the Flight Safety Foundation education and
11 training aid report, most of those areas could be
12 applied at little or no cost.

13 What it requires is management will to do it,
14 and then, of course, a resource and effort to support
15 it. So, there is a small cost, but it's not a big one.

16 We've already covered, I think, the crew education and
17 awareness as being one step, but the most important
18 thing is to make better use of the available equipment
19 that we have on our aircraft. Some operators do that
20 already, but many could make better use.

21 There needs to be a management review of
22 policies and procedures. That takes time and effort,
23 but it's well worth it. There needs to be appropriate
24 and more effective training.

1 We also need to encourage, I think, the new
2 equipment development and the application of new
3 technology, and most important of all, we need to move
4 in this area of performance monitoring so that we know
5 how the aircraft and how the flight crew are performing
6 when they're out in the airplane, not just in the
7 simulator.

8 DR. BRENNER: Thank you, Captain Woodburn.
9 That completes our questioning, Mr. Chairman.

10 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: FAA?

11 MR. DONNER: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. We
12 have no questions.

13 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: NATCA?

14 MR. MOTE: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. No
15 questions.

16 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Guam?

17 MR. DERVISH: Thank you. No questions.

18 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Korean Air?

19 CAPTAIN KIM: Thank you. No questions.

20 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Branson? Barton. I'm
21 sorry.

22 MR. EDWARD MONTGOMERY: Thank you, Mr.
23 Chairman. No questions.

24 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Boeing Company?

1 MR. DARCEY: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. No
2 questions.

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: KCAB?

4 MR. LEE: No questions. Thank you, Chairman.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Feith?

6 MR. FEITH: Just several questions, follow-up
7 questions, and the first one is probably tell-tale on
8 ourselves.

9 You had spoken of the reluctance of
10 regulatory authorities to become involved in this -- in
11 this program, and you had spoken specifically of your
12 regulatory authority.

13 Have you had any feedback as to the
14 reluctance or a perceived reluctance on the part of the
15 FAA or any other worldwide regulatory authority what
16 their concerns are?

17 THE WITNESS: I've had no specific feedback
18 to me personally at all. I have good contacts with my
19 own regulatory authority, and they in principle support
20 what's going on.

21 The problem is manpower to commit to doing
22 it, bearing in mind all of the other tasks that they're
23 supposed to be doing. That, I think, is more the heart
24 of the problem, not an objection in principle, to what
25 we're trying to achieve here, and it's a question, I

1 think, of just changing priorities and recognizing that
2 this is a valuable initiative that must be supported
3 and continued to achieve the desired improvement.

4 MR. FEITH: I'll take that one step further
5 and go beyond the regulatory authorities. I may be
6 telling tale on ourselves, but has the NTSB or the AAIB
7 or any other safety organization around the world been
8 involved in this program?

9 THE WITNESS: Yes. I have to say that
10 whereas CFIT may not have been supported as well as we
11 would have liked, what I didn't describe to everyone
12 here today was that the Flight Safety Foundation
13 initiative concentrated on CFIT initially because of
14 the fatality data that I showed you.

15 We also recognized that CFIT and approach and
16 landing accidents are very closely related. Indeed,
17 it's sometimes difficult to separate the two. It's
18 really two sides of the same coin in some respects.

19 There are a number of working groups still
20 running with the Flight Safety Foundation on the
21 approach and landing accident reduction element of this
22 initiative, and that has now involved both regulatory
23 authorities and safety organizations, and I have to say
24 I think that is after the event and the degree of
25 success that CFIT activity showed. So, yes, we've got

1 them involved at last.

2 MR. FEITH: And just to make sure that I have
3 a correct perception, were the ATC authorities involved
4 in the -- in this program, also?

5 THE WITNESS: They were invited to
6 participate, and indeed the air traffic control and
7 ground equipment working groups started off under an
8 FAA chairman several years ago, but within a year, he
9 took early retirement, and that was the end of FAA
10 participation of any sort, unfortunately.

11 Subsequently, when the group was reconvened
12 and then completed its report some 18 months or so ago,
13 there were few representatives, if any representatives,
14 from air traffic managements, but we actually had air
15 traffic controller participation. So, it was the --
16 like the pilot, we had the man on the spot there.

17 MR. FEITH: So, that's worldwide air traffic
18 control, --

19 THE WITNESS: Yes.

20 MR. FEITH: -- not just the FAA or --

21 THE WITNESS: Yes.

22 MR. FEITH: -- just --

23 THE WITNESS: That's correct.

24 MR. FEITH: -- that kind of organization?

1 THE WITNESS: Yes.

2 MR. FEITH: Just for a clarification, you had
3 spoken in one of your presentations about stabilized
4 approach velocity. I think just for the benefit, could
5 you give us the nutshell or Reader's Digest version of
6 what you mean by stabilized approach criteria for the
7 approach segment because I think you related it to the
8 three-degree approach?

9 THE WITNESS: I don't have the benefit of a
10 diagram here, but if we can visualize a final approach
11 segment around the three-degree descent path, and
12 ideally one should have somewhere between eight to 10
13 miles of in-line approach, constant descent from what
14 may be 2 to 3,000 feet, in a landing configuration
15 established early enough such that the landing check-
16 list can be completed and out of the way, to allow the
17 flight crew to then perform the remainder of the final
18 approach and the transition of the final approach fix
19 without having distracting and conflicting tasks.

20 You then need to set gates at various points
21 on the approach, and many operators choose, for
22 instance, 1,000 feet above the field as a particular
23 point when the airplane must be in the landing
24 configuration, must be at the right speed at no more
25 than maybe 20 knots past the target speed with the

1 approach pass and landing checklist complete and so on,
2 and that is the target for all approaches.

3 Then operators may have another point down
4 the approach, and 500 feet is common, at which point
5 there is a tighter gate still in terms of speed and
6 associated conditions being on the vertical profile in
7 the right position to complete the landing, and if the
8 tighter set of conditions are not met, then there
9 should be a mandatory go-around requirement from the
10 500-foot point.

11 The target at 1,000 feet, if not met, is one
12 which has consideration given to go-around, yes or no;
13 500 feet mandatory go-around if the conditions are not
14 met, and the final check is at 100 feet, and
15 particularly on limiting runways, this target is where
16 the aircraft has to be at the right point above the
17 threshold, at the right rate of descent, and not
18 exceeding a speed of, say, 15 or 20 as the maximum
19 condition for landing.

20 On a limiting runway, if that particular gate
21 is not met, then again mandatory go-around. So, I
22 would liken it a bit like if you can imagine at 1,000,
23 500 and at 100 feet, three eyes of a needle. It's a
24 slightly bigger hole at 1,000, a smaller home at 500
25 feet, and a very small hole at 100 feet, and you thread

1 the aircraft through the needles, and you get it right.

2 MR. FEITH: Thank you, Captain, for that
3 explanation. Appreciate it.

4 You had made a statement regarding providing
5 all crew members with charts, so that they could
6 basically all be up to speed on the approach. Would
7 that include non-flying crew members; that is FEs or
8 international relief pilots that may be in the cockpit
9 but not actually performing a flying duty?

10 THE WITNESS: You added a caveat on the end
11 there, not performing a flying duty. There are some
12 two-crew aircraft designed for two-crew operations
13 which have third crew members which do not have
14 assigned duties, and that is one category, and I would
15 say in that case, it's the operating crew members that
16 have to have the charts.

17 However, there are many three-crew aircraft
18 operating in the world today with either flight
19 engineers as pilot or engineer in the third seat who
20 are forward-facing for take-off and landing and who do
21 have assigned duties of monitoring the pilots.

22 If they are to monitor effectively, they have
23 to have the chart to be able to do that. It's very
24 difficult in night-time conditions to be looking over a
25 pilot's shoulder trying to reach his chart when you're

1 supposed to be doing other things as well, or during
2 briefing to try and extract and write down relevant
3 bits of information to enable the monitoring to take
4 place. That -- that procedure, I think, is
5 unsatisfactory.

6 MR. FEITH: And with regard to one of the
7 charts that you showed depicting minimum safe altitudes
8 and your explanation that pilots would rather see what
9 the minimum safe altitude is than to try to figure it
10 out, ball park it and then make sure that they hit the
11 right altitude, the chart that you showed is produced
12 by an independent organization over in your side of the
13 world. Jeppesen, of course, is typically a world
14 standard for charting.

15 Do you have any comparison because Jeppesen
16 doesn't show that on their charts? Do you have any
17 particular opinion about the differences in charting?

18 THE WITNESS: Yes, I do. Mean I'm not
19 being critical of any particular company. I believe
20 that the industry recognizes that terrain or minimum
21 safe altitude are better presented in contours rather
22 than in tabular or spot height form.

23 One gets a much better impression. I
24 actually have two charts here to show a comparison of
25 the two different techniques which I could show, if you

1 would allow me.

2 MR. FEITH: Please.

3 THE WITNESS: And you can see therefore the
4 difference of presentation that one should, I -- I
5 emphasize, not be critical of either. They are
6 satisfying two different purposes, and the rationale
7 behind it is to make it easy to read and use.

8 Now both are better than the ways that used
9 to be the norm, and I would encourage developments in
10 this direction. The problem, of course, with minimum
11 safe altitude compared with presentation of terrain is
12 that you may need some degree of skill and cartographic
13 application to, as it were, draw the right minimum safe
14 altitudes versus terrain which is fixed to the ground
15 or topographical charts. You may simplify those, but
16 they're easier to draw.

17 So, let me just show you, and you can see
18 what they look like.

19 MR. FEITH: And just for the benefit of us,
20 we're going to give Jim Terpstra an opportunity to
21 defend his position when -- when he testifies regarding
22 Jep charting.

23 THE WITNESS: What you've got here are two
24 real charts.

1 MR. FEITH: Excuse me one second. Can we
2 just lower the lights a little bit so we get a better
3 picture, please?

4 THE WITNESS: Is it possible too? That
5 slightly differently? Okay.

6 Here on the left-hand chart, this is minimum
7 safe altitude presentation of the safe altitudes to fly
8 at, and you can see, I think, pretty quickly that it's
9 very easy to pick the appropriate figures here.
10 They're in hundreds. The large digit is the thousands,
11 the smaller digit being hundreds, and it's very easy to
12 then -- this -- these are the mountains to the
13 southeast of Geneva.

14 If we look at the -- the chart on the right-
15 hand side, here we're seeing -- if we go to the same
16 area, the bottom right, one has to be a little bit more
17 careful in terms of reading the figures on here and
18 remember this is terrain. So, you've got to get the
19 right figure, then apply the right margin of either
20 1,000 or 2,000 feet obstacle clearance, and remember
21 you've got to do this in night-time cockpit conditions
22 with the airplane flying at various speeds.

23 Now both of these presentations, this one is
24 in a brown tint which shows the ground, the other chart
25 is showing minimum safe altitude, which is in green,

1 these conform with the ICAO Annex 4 requirements for
2 charting, which says that the ground shall be in either
3 black or brown, and that minimum safe altitude shall be
4 in green.

5 Now, obviously one can see the basic
6 similarity of terrain is evident on both, but you have
7 to ask yourselves which is the easier one to use and
8 apply flying an instrument approach.

9 We, in my particular company, started off
10 using the terrain contour presentation some 35 years
11 ago, and we then found some difficulties of
12 interpretation in the night-time configurations of
13 those aircraft.

14 We started to experiment with this type of
15 minimum safe altitude display, and in the 1960s ran a
16 test with our pilots, and we had a more than 90 percent
17 in favor of presentation of minimum safe altitude
18 rather than the terrain itself, and for the past 30
19 years or so, we have maintained this style of
20 presentation.

21 Either of these, as I continue to reiterate,
22 is much better than those earlier charts which did not
23 have the contour presentation on at all. So, the fact
24 that the industry is now moving in this direction is, I
25 think, enormously important.

1 MR. FEITH: Thank you, Captain.

2 Lights up, please. One last question. You
3 had talked about trying to collect, I guess, real world
4 data from line operations, so that you could feed that
5 back into the training arena, and I think you as a line
6 pilot know, and I think the industry knows, that a lot
7 of times, the collection of such data is feared by
8 pilots, that management will use that for other
9 purposes other than for training or education but more
10 for punitive action.

11 Given that we are trying to collect real
12 world data, we're using crew performance data as an
13 educational tool or that's the intent of it, how do you
14 change that mindset in the crew, in the cockpit, that
15 this won't be used as a punitive tool, it's used as an
16 educational tool because that fear goes very far back,
17 especially with the use of the CVR or the flight data
18 recorder information, things like that?

19 THE WITNESS: That is a complex issue. You
20 really need to have an agreed set of procedures between
21 an airline management and its flight crew community.
22 It also needs the positive support of the associated
23 regulatory authority, such that punishment doesn't
24 follow from such data. That should not be the intent.

1 I think all pilot associations know of the
2 various schemes in existence whereby such data is
3 collected on an anonymous basis. It is not associated
4 with a particular pilot, and some operators have
5 procedures whereby only the union representative can be
6 given information from engineering, not flight crew
7 management, to eventually contact an individual to seek
8 further information.

9 Airline managements do not have access or
10 should not have access to the individual themselves,
11 except through pre-arranged procedures that the pilot
12 associations are comfortable with.

13 I know of many operators who've moved in this
14 direction, and, yes, it is a learning process, an
15 education process, and it's not enough for managements
16 to say certain things. They actually have to do
17 certain things. They have to prove and support the
18 agreements, and they must not hound the pilot to punish
19 him because they prejudice the whole system and the
20 value of the system.

21 So, it can be done, but it needs positive
22 education, support, appropriate procedures, and then
23 the support of the regulatory authority to make it
24 work.

1 MR. FEITH: Captain, thank you very much for
2 your testimony. Appreciate it.

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: This last issue is -- is a
4 question of establishment and maintenance of trust and
5 confidence.

6 Pat? Mr. Berman?

7 MR. BERMAN: Captain, we heard testimony
8 yesterday from Korean Air about their procedures for
9 responding to a GPWS alert. We heard that there is not
10 a mandatory go-around for a sink rate or terrain --
11 terrain warning in IMC.

12 Can you please evaluate that procedure?

13 THE WITNESS: There are, I think, two levels
14 of alert from ground proximity. There is, as we all
15 know, the pull-up alert associated for most airplanes
16 with red warnings and that is and must be a mandatory
17 go-around.

18 However, there are other what we would call
19 secondary alerts, which many operators allow their
20 pilots to correct the condition without necessarily
21 associating it with a mandatory go-around, unless they
22 are at a low altitude, and the secondary alert is
23 continuous, and the best course of action is therefore
24 to get out of there.

1 Many of the secondary alert features of
2 ground proximity warning with -- if they exist for a
3 period of time, get translated into a primary alert of
4 a pull-up anyway. You'll get there.

5 MR. BERMAN: Could you give me an estimate of
6 the number of air carriers that you are aware of that
7 -- that do not have that procedure? In other words,
8 that require a mandatory pull-up for a secondary alert,
9 such as that.

10 THE WITNESS: I -- to be honest, I have no
11 data on that. I know what a number of airlines do,
12 which is what I've described. I know what
13 manufacturers and the -- both of the airplane and the
14 equipment generally recommend that we do, but beyond
15 that, I have no figures on it.

16 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Thank you. What has been
17 the usage worldwide as far as you know of the Flight
18 Safety Foundation CFIT training aid?

19 THE WITNESS: I believe the use has been
20 extremely limited worldwide. I think a number of
21 airlines are still in the process of translating what
22 is a fairly large package of material into something
23 that suits their particular operation.

24 For those of you that have not seen the
25 education and training aid, it is two very large

1 volumes of paper with an associated video of some --
2 some 30 minutes' duration, and it is not an effective
3 package to give to pilots.

4 You have to, I think, take appropriate
5 elements out of that, repackage it in a form that is
6 then suitable for individual flight crew communities.
7 That takes time, and my belief is a number of operators
8 are in that phase of adapting it. Many others,
9 however, I believe, are still in the phase of it got
10 parked on a shelf somewhere gathering dust, and it has
11 not yet received serious consideration within those
12 operators, and that's why I feel that the efforts made
13 by the Flight Safety Foundation to find out what
14 happened to this distribution of the aid will be
15 valuable because it will be another reminder to that
16 package that came last year how we should have done
17 something with it, and it will spur them into action, I
18 hope.

19 MR. BERMAN: Thank you. Could you please
20 characterize the workload involved in executing a
21 constant rate descent procedure on a non-precision
22 approach without an electronic glide scope and without
23 pre-calculated descent starting point or -- or pre-
24 calculated check points along the way that are on the
25 chart?

1 THE WITNESS: If you have no means of
2 establishing additional data points on the final
3 approach, the constant descent without other than just
4 a final approach fix requires the calculation of an
5 estimated rate of descent based upon ground speed for
6 the final approach segment, and associated with the
7 constant angle approach is also the need to be
8 stabilized at an early enough point such that landing
9 checklist is out of the way early enough, flight crew
10 can positively then monitor the conduct of final
11 approach.

12 The workload of such a procedure, I think, is
13 considerably less than attempting to fly level, for
14 instance, a descent to an MDA in a jet aircraft that's
15 3 or 400 feet above the field typically in a landing
16 configuration requires fine judgment to then seek
17 visual reference over a nose pointing in the air and
18 then complete an approach at the right descent path to
19 the runway, all of that in limiting conditions.

20 The constant angle descent, I believe, also
21 should be associated with a philosophy of not flying
22 level and on reaching an MDA, whatever that value is,
23 if visual reference is not secured for landing, then
24 the aircraft should conduct a missed approach at that
25 point.

1 MR. BERMAN: Captain, if pilots were
2 executing a constant rate descent-type approach, would
3 you expect them to set into the altitude selector the
4 intervening step-down altitudes?

5 THE WITNESS: I would believe that that is
6 one way of doing it, yes. My particular aircraft is
7 well-endowed with flight management system constraints,
8 so we can achieve that, and those restrictions will be
9 observed.

10 For a more basic aircraft, yes, that can be
11 done. It can also -- one needs to be careful of
12 observing limitations without setting those in. If
13 you've got effective pilot monitoring, that can be
14 done, but it is safer to put those intervening
15 altitudes in so you have the protection that the
16 airplane should level off, particularly if operating
17 under autopilot.

18 Even when operating with flight director,
19 there are commands on the flight director bars that if
20 the pilot inadvertently continued descent when he
21 should not have done, then he gets the protection of
22 those intervening altitudes being set, yes.

23 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Thank you. No further
24 questions.

1 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Schleede?

2 MR. SCHLEEDE: Yes, just one short question
3 about your comments about the need for both flying
4 pilots or two pilots having sets of charts.

5 Do your comments apply also for smaller
6 aircraft, like twin -- small commuter airplanes?

7 THE WITNESS: Yes. In fact, it's less of a
8 problem with the bigger operators, and it's much more
9 of a problem with the smaller operators where, for a
10 variety of reasons, probably cost, one set of charts
11 tends to be supplied, and where two pilots are carried,
12 they share charts. That's commonly the case.

13 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you.

14 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Thank you very much,
15 Captain Woodburn. That was very, very helpful for us.

16 THE WITNESS: Thank you, Chairman, and ladies
17 and gentlemen.

18 (Whereupon, the witness was excused.)

19 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: We'll now take a break.
20 It is, according to my watch, seven seconds before
21 11:00. We'll come back at 20 after 11.

22 (Whereupon, a recess was taken.)

23 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: We are ready to go. Our
24 next witness is Mr. Don Bateman, who is Chief Engineer,
25 Flight Safety Systems for Allied Signal, also a

1 participant in the CFIT activities of the Flight Safety
2 Foundation, and I believe he's been sworn in by Mr.
3 Schleede, and Mr. Schleede has the floor.
4 Whereupon,

5 DON BATEMAN

6 having been first duly sworn, was called as a witness
7 herein and was examined and testified as follows:

8 TESTIMONY OF DON BATEMAN

9 CHIEF ENGINEER, FLIGHT SAFETY SYSTEMS

10 ALLIED SIGNAL, INC.

11 REDMOND, WASHINGTON

12 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you. Mr. Bateman, give
13 us your full name and business address for the record.

14 THE WITNESS: My full name is Charles Donald
15 Bateman. I'm known by my friends as Don. And my
16 address is in Redmond, Washington, the State of
17 Washington, at Allied Signal Company.

18 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you. Would you give us
19 a brief summary of your education and experience that
20 qualifies you for your current position?

21 THE WITNESS: Well, I like flying. I was --
22 I graduated from the University of Saskatchewan as an
23 engineer, electrical engineer, and then I worked back
24 East for a heavy radar company, and then I went to work
25 for a very informative two years at Boeing on the 707

1 and left there, and I've been with the same firm, even
2 though we've been bought twice, since, and our kind of
3 business was -- was avionics, designing equipment for
4 aircraft.

5 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you very much.

6 Mr. Pereira will begin.

7 MR. PEREIRA: Good morning, Mr. Bateman. How
8 long have you been working on CFIT prevention, and in
9 what capacity?

10 THE WITNESS: Well, in about 1966, I was a
11 Caravelle flown in short at night, drizzle, in Ankara,
12 Turkey, and it was operated by SAS, and -- and everyone
13 had lost their lives in that accident, and it was a lot
14 of concern about maybe this could happen again, and
15 Scandinavian Airlines wrote sort of a problem statement
16 that it shared with the industry.

17 What they really wanted was basically a
18 system that would be like a fire-warning bell that
19 would inform the pilot that something was wrong, and
20 that's how we started out in the evolution of -- of a
21 warning system that we call Ground Proximity Warning
22 System today. So, that's 31 years.

23 MR. PEREIRA: Okay. There's been a great
24 deal of discussion about GPWS and enhanced GPWS at this
25 hearing. As one of the primary manufacturers of these

1 systems, would you please describe what GPWS and
2 enhanced GPWS are, taking time to explain any of their
3 relative advantages and disadvantages?

4 THE WITNESS: All right. I'll try to do
5 that, and I'll try to keep it short. I brought some
6 view foils or overheads that perhaps will make the
7 points I'd like to make.

8 The purpose of what we call ground ~~priority~~
9 warning systems or GPWS, as the acronym, is to provide
10 the pilot with a timely alert, visually and orally, of
11 possibly flying into the ground or water, and at that
12 time in '67, in 1967, we really wanted to use what's on
13 the airplane. We -- at that time, our Category 2
14 equipment was being installed, and as part of that
15 equipment was the radio altimeter that looks down below
16 the airplane to see the terrain.

17 We also had air data signals, and we also had
18 glide scope deviation which exists on just about all
19 the airplanes. So, that's basically the purpose, was
20 to provide an early alert, if possible, something could
21 be wrong.

22 Next slide, please. Since that time, we've
23 accumulated in the 31 years a tremendous amount of
24 experience. Today's commercial jet airfleet is about
25 12,500 aircraft, and, unfortunately, we still have

1 airplanes being flown with no ground proximity warning
2 system nor -- in many of them nor radio altimeter.
3 But, nevertheless, it's a very high proportion of the
4 airplanes are equipped and flying with some form of
5 ground proximity warning system. Some are very old and
6 ancient and some are pretty new.

7 We've accumulated over 230 million departures
8 probably worldwide. So, there's a lot of experience
9 with this equipment, and in conjunction with minimum
10 safe altitude warning system in the United States,
11 because that really is very, very effective technology
12 -- pieces of technology can reduce the risk, and we've
13 lowered it from about .85 to .03 per million. That's a
14 28 times reduction in risk, which is paid in terms of
15 airplanes that have been prevented from flying into the
16 ground.

17 Unfortunately, in FAR 129, it still remains
18 high, and -- and the previous speaker, I think, made
19 some very good points about why we must continue with
20 training and so on.

21 Next slide. What the GPWS uses is the
22 existing radio altimeter, and looking at the radio
23 altitude, the height above the field, we look at the
24 descent rate. We also can use air speed sometimes to
25 try to advance the alert, if a high-speed descent or

1 flight is involved.

2 We try to look at the landing gear, not to
3 determine really that it's down or up, but just to
4 determine that you wouldn't be where you are with, say,
5 500 foot of terrain clearance with the landing gear
6 still up. Something's got to be wrong. So, we try to
7 alert the pilot.

8 The same with landing flap. Most pilots try
9 to land with the landing flap as part of the
10 procedures. If it's not down, the terrain clearance
11 may be as low as 200 feet, something's wrong.

12 We also normally don't fly the airplane below
13 the glide scope. So, we use that in conjunction with
14 relating that to the ground to alert the pilot to the
15 fact that something may be wrong with the glide scope
16 or his position with the respective glide scope.

17 In some installations, we use a radio
18 altitude setting, whatever the pilot has put in, to use
19 it as an advisory or an alert for the pilot.

20 Next slide. The outputs we get from the GPWS
21 are soft alerts, sink rate, and I believe in this
22 particular -- at Guam, we heard one sink rate. Down
23 sink would be at take-off when the airplane may be in
24 the dark accelerating back into the ground. We also
25 get too low terrain, glide scope, that sort of thing.

1 A hard warning is when we've got to a point
2 where we're running out of time to recover the
3 airplane. Typically, we say terrain, pull-up, and the
4 pull-up -- at first, when we start out with GPWS, it
5 was a warning tone because we couldn't -- technology
6 was such that we couldn't generate a voice, but we've
7 been able to generate many voices now. Maybe we've got
8 too many of them.

9 Advisories. We'd like to also from the radio
10 altitude altimeter create a list of advisories. The
11 flight operations people usually select these. I
12 believe on the Guam -- Guam -- particular Guam airplane
13 involved at Guam, we heard a call-out at 1,000 feet, at
14 500 feet, and a hundred, so on, as we approach over the
15 runway.

16 GPWS, like anything in this world, has got
17 its limitations, and it has -- the limitations have
18 been rather illuminated for us, and in this particular
19 accident, they're illuminated again. It can give very
20 short warnings for flight into precipitous terrain.
21 That's what happened, I'd say, in some of the recent
22 accidents, like Cali. There just wasn't enough
23 sufficient time for the pilot to recover the aircraft.

24 We -- we may not give an alert or warning for
25 a stabilized approach or stable flight into the terrain

1 when you're configured for full landing. GPWS has no
2 way of knowing where the end of the field is or the end
3 of the -- the runway, and if there's no glide scope
4 signal, there would be no glide scope alert, and
5 another limitation, the last one I put there, is the
6 altitude calls are referenced to altitude above ground,
7 not runway, and we have some differences sometimes.

8 GPWS is required -- I think that's the wrong
9 one. Sorry. Let me just read from this anyway. A
10 misplaced slide here. Could you excuse me just for a
11 moment?

12 (Pause)

13 THE WITNESS: Sorry. I -- my slides got
14 misplaced. In the United States, GPWS is required on
15 all U.S. airplanes with 10 passenger seats or more, and
16 that -- and these -- these aircraft operate under Part
17 121, 125 and 135.

18 GPWS is not required for foreign aircraft in
19 -- flying in or out of the United States under Part
20 129. However, under ICAO, Annex 6, most states are
21 recommended -- recommended to carry an operating GPWS,
22 and most states, including South Korea, do comply.

23 In the last 12 years in the United States and
24 for operations in and out of the United States
25 possessions, I put a list on here. There's 12

1 airplanes, and as the previous speaker and other
2 speakers have said, this is an on-going problem. Agana
3 is only one of these 12, and -- and the operator is --
4 is not specifically isolated. There are many, many
5 operators involved with these losses. Many countries.
6 It's a worldwide problem.

7 The Agana fits in the -- in the situation
8 where the airplane's configured for a landing, and
9 there's no warning. There were advisories, and I don't
10 understand why the crew flew through those advisories.

11 Lima, Peru, was an American airplane, a cargo
12 airplane, a non-precision approach in 1996. Cali,
13 we've mentioned. You can go through each one of these,
14 and, unfortunately, most of them involve a loss of
15 life.

16 In San Salvador, we lost two ambassadors, the
17 ambassador from Holland, from the Netherlands, the
18 ambassador from Brazil, and in La Paz, Bolivia, which
19 is at the very bottom there, an Eastern Airline
20 airplane, we lost the ambassador to Paraguay's wife and
21 the director of the Peace Corps. These are very
22 painful to the people involved.

23 Next one. Last year, just to show that it's
24 a worldwide problem, we lost three airplanes. Agana
25 we're talking about today. Madan, Indonesia, was a

1 radar vector for an ILS and a miscommunication between
2 the crews, between the controller and the pilots. At
3 Bangladesh, we had an F-28 that went in in landing
4 configuration into a rice field in the dark.
5 Unfortunately, the airplane was destroyed. Amazingly,
6 nobody was killed.

7 Next one. This one right there. All right.

8 If you take these 12 accidents, you can put them down
9 here in a -- sort of a breakdown. In many cases, not
10 in the U.S. but we have had worldwide no GPWS
11 installed. A very small minority of airplanes is where
12 the greatest risk is in the losses, and then we've had
13 the 28 percent shown there with no warning. This is a
14 case where the airplane -- aircraft is configured to
15 land and no warning.

16 These late warnings or improper pilot
17 response for the 41 percent would be what I would
18 classify like Cali, there just is not enough time by
19 looking down to try to see ahead.

20 Let me go to this one here. Put this up.
21 So, we've tried to improve the GPWS by providing
22 increased situation awareness, if we can, of
23 significant terrain or obstacles with relationship to
24 the aircraft.

1 If a pilot can really perceive where he or
2 she is with the relationship to the runway or the
3 terrain, we've got a much better chance of never ever
4 having an alert or a warning in the first place. We'd
5 like to by looking ahead into that terrain database, if
6 possible, provide a timely alert that is more in the
7 nature of about a minute or half a minute compared to
8 the 15, 10, 12 seconds we get now with the conventional
9 GPWS.

10 Again, we also want to keep the system
11 practical by using existing sensors, such as the FMS,
12 IRS or INS, GPS, scope of positioning system; that is,
13 in -- it's on the existing airplanes. We also want to
14 use an existing weather radar or EFIS map display to
15 show the terrain.

16 We use the same signals as GPWS. We use
17 position data that's already in most of the airplanes,
18 that's already wired to the GPWS. We have track and
19 heading and ground speed from those signals. We use
20 altitude MSL because quite often -- I mean in the
21 databases which I'll talk about this morning. They're
22 measured -- they're referenced to mean sea level.

23 A new signal, though, we do need is the
24 display range, and the output as shown at the bottom is
25 -- we want to drive the EFIS or weather radar with

1 terrain pictures.

2 And we want to add --to make this thing
3 work, we need to add the worldwide database, which
4 would be airport terrain, airport runway ends, the
5 terrain data and manmade obstacles.

6 A wonderful thing happened during the end of
7 the Cold War between the Western powers and the Soviet
8 Union, was that both -- enlightened people on both
9 sides decided to use the digitized terrain that was
10 developed for military purposes for cruise missiles and
11 so on be made available for the civil sector, and
12 that's been very, very good. It is something I didn't
13 think would happen in my lifetime.

14 The second thing I didn't think would happen
15 is we would be able to develop flash memory, memory on
16 the consumer side, very low cost but very small size,
17 that we could store this data on, and typically we can
18 put that -- all that data on the size of this credit
19 card, and this -- this is -- this has all been
20 happening in the last five years. Something that we
21 dreamed of but never realized it would really happen so
22 quickly, all of a sudden.

23 We need also, though -- one point I want to
24 make out, is that some of the countries in the world
25 still consider their terrain data as military,

1 classified, and -- and Korea is one of those,
2 unfortunately. We need Korea and many, many countries
3 to share that data with the world, and it doesn't have
4 to be down to military quality data, but it can be down
5 to about what we call 30 r seconds or half nautical
6 mile cells. This is good enough for what we need for
7 commercial transport purposes.

8 And I should skip this slide, but this looks
9 awful busy, but the portion that's shown in green,
10 those all exist in most airplanes. All production
11 airplanes don't have all those signals that go to the
12 GPWS. So, we're adding the bottom there, which is a
13 blue section, which is basically the terrain databases
14 and airport data, and then we want to drive a display
15 that -- that we share with either showing weather radar
16 or terrain.

17 A quick view, next slide, please, shows --
18 this is typically like the size of a chocolate box.
19 It's -- and -- and from the front, we can load data
20 which we don't have to do. Terrain doesn't change very
21 much in our lifetime. So, it's a very reasonable thing
22 to do.

23 But the idea is to use what is available in
24 the airplane and replace -- simply replace the existing
25 GPWS computer with the enhanced one.

1 Next view foil. This is a picture of my
2 colleague, Hans Mueller, and we're looking at a terrain
3 in a -- on the right there of -- we're at Juneau.
4 We're in a 747-400 airplane which is rather unlikely to
5 be at Juneau, Alaska, but, anyway, we can see the plan
6 of departure's down that canal, and we should always
7 have a black area where we're flying.

8 To make the display intuitive, next view
9 foil, we use a scheme of the terrain that's referenced
10 to the airplane. This is not a map of terrain. This
11 is a -- is terrain that's referenced to the airplane.
12 You're flying at 30,000 feet. It will be all dark
13 shown on the very bottom there. If you get within
14 2,000 of the -- of the terrain, we start to have a
15 slight color of green, and as we approach up to the
16 altitude, it should be still a little bit green. It
17 will start to go yellow and above there, more yellow,
18 and finally we get to a dotted density of red.

19 How that looks in the next view foil.
20 Attorneys won't like this, but I picked Cali. This --
21 if you were -- the airport is -- is at the top of the
22 screen there, SKLC, and we're at Tulo, which is a sort
23 of initial approach fix.

24 At this point, this is what a normal approach
25 you would see. You'd see all the dark. It's all dark,

1 and the terrain is red, at least 2,000 feet above you
2 or more, and the yellow's a thousand feet above you,
3 less yellow is at your altitude or higher, and you can
4 get a good picture, sort of a situation awareness, that
5 everything's okay here, and the planned flight path as
6 shown on the display is correct.

7 We want to also look ahead into the terrain
8 database and to give an alert, and this looks rather
9 complex, but it's -- it's -- it's below the airplane.
10 There's two envelopes. One is a cautionary alert,
11 one's a warning. They vary automatically with your
12 speed and your relationship to the airport, and we also
13 want to make sure that we can out-climb the terrain.
14 So, we also look up six degrees. As one of the
15 witnesses told you that day in MSAW, it was five
16 degrees.

17 Next slide. And this is sort of a crude
18 picture, but you can see the airplane flying towards
19 these terrain cells, and these terrain cells are about
20 a half a nautical mile each, and when the elevation is
21 stored above sea level.

22 The -- also, we want to surround the airport
23 with a terrain clearance floor. The bottom of this bow
24 is the airport, and we store in terms of information
25 the ends of the runway, and then we slowly build a

1 floor up that progressively grows with distance from
2 the runway to try to protect against landing short. As
3 the previous speaker said, half of our losses are on
4 the non-precision approach.

5 This is a picture of what would -- of the
6 track that you've seen that the NTSB has displayed as
7 shown. The airport is at the extreme right, in the
8 upper corner, right corner. This is a ground track
9 picture.

10 These are the terrain cells, and in each of
11 those cells, you will see an elevation stored digitally
12 on some flash memory.

13 Please change.

14 MR. PEREIRA: Mr. Bateman, before we go too
15 much further on to the Korean accident, could you touch
16 back again on the database, the terrain database? You
17 mentioned that Korea hasn't provided it. Is there a
18 significant lack of worldwide coverage or could you
19 summarize that briefly?

20 THE WITNESS: The -- the -- some countries
21 still consider it a military secret. Basically in
22 South America is a prime example of that.

23 The United States is in the position of
24 releasing much more data, but we're very, very
25 sensitive to political and military agreements with

1 some of these countries. So, we've had to work as a
2 company trying to acquire data any way we could, and
3 the Russians have been very supportive in trying to do
4 that for us because they're willing to -- they need
5 money, and -- but some places still missing are the
6 bulls in Brazil, the upper latitudes agreement.

7 But essentially we have most train data
8 today, but not to the accuracies we'd like to have.

9 MR. PEREIRA: Do you have a map of the world
10 that shows that coverage or --

11 THE WITNESS: Well, I apologize to everyone
12 in this room that I did that terrible, terrible thing.

13 I didn't match my view foils to the -- I thought we
14 were.

15 Yes, as shown in blue areas what we're still
16 missing, and you can see little bits of every country
17 except the United States and Canada is very thorough,
18 but most of the airports of the world that we're
19 operating in, too, like Agana, is -- was covered.

20 Agana wasn't an original -- what we call a
21 digital or a DMA release from the U.S. Government, but
22 we -- we generate it ourselves before the accident and
23 had it in place. So, we have some work to do in the
24 blue areas there.

1 Korea is not shown as blue but it's basically
2 very crude data, and -- and as I said, Russians have
3 helped with -- helped us with some data for -- I see
4 North Korea is filled in.

5 MR. PEREIRA: The large South American area,
6 what's preventing us from getting that data?

7 THE WITNESS: Well, as I said, these
8 governments, like Brazil, have border disputes with --
9 with Peru, Ecuador, not so much with Ecuador, but
10 certainly with Colombia and Venezuela and -- and -- and
11 Bolivia, and -- and it's difficult to get military to
12 release anything less than 500,000.

13 In the United States, we have much -- we can
14 -- our military probably has much of this data, but
15 they certainly don't want to offend any particular
16 country. So, we've had to assemble this.

17 In the Brazilian area there, you'll see some
18 areas that are not covered. We've added those
19 ourselves at great expense from satellites to be able
20 to put terrain around key airports.

21 MR. PEREIRA: Have you exhausted all -- all
22 of the possibilities with the U.S. Department of
23 Defense on obtaining these data?

24 THE WITNESS: No. After the accident, after
25 Brovnik and the White House, I think, we became very

1 interested in -- in controlled flight into terrain.
2 They've been slowly applying pressure on the -- on the
3 military and the State Department to try to work out
4 something reasonable with the different states
5 involved, and I'm hoping, I'm very optimistic that more
6 and more data will be released.

7 This isn't just data for our particular kind
8 of instrument, but it's very important. It can be
9 very, very useful for people who design instrument
10 procedures, engine-out procedures, things like that.
11 It's a great safety tool for us.

12 MR. PEREIRA: Is there anything in particular
13 that you think the Safety Board could do to assist in
14 getting these data?

15 THE WITNESS: I think just be supportive of
16 efforts by FAA and NOAA and our military, too, and --
17 and -- and -- and with the State Department the best we
18 can to try to get the individual countries involved to
19 help.

20 MR. PEREIRA: For enhanced ground blocks, are
21 there any future regulatory plans that are in the
22 works?

23 THE WITNESS: I understand there's a notice
24 of proposed rulemaking that has -- that I was briefed
25 last week on this by an FAA person publicly, that will

1 be called a notice of proposed rulemaking, has been
2 generated requiring upgrading GPWS to enhanced GPWS,
3 also lowering it down from 10 seats to six seats in the
4 United States. This has been signed by the FAA
5 Administrator Jane Garvey and has gone to the
6 Department of Transportation for review and hopefully
7 soon being published for the public to comment on.

8 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Can I ask a question here,
9 Don? Is -- is there, in addition to the number of
10 seats, also a -- a requirement that would affect large
11 cargo aircraft?

12 THE WITNESS: I think the NPRM, as I
13 understand it, will cover all Part 121 operations, and
14 -- but -- and, so, it would cover the cargo aircraft.

15 MR. PEREIRA: Did they mention any proposed
16 dates for implementation of the requirements?

17 THE WITNESS: Well, I think their target is
18 something like 2003 to have all aircraft fitted. An
19 interesting thing has happened, is that all the
20 airlines, major airlines in the United States, through
21 their collective industry representative called Air
22 Transport Association, has made the announcement that
23 they were going to equip these things voluntarily with
24 no rule, and they will all be completed by 2003.

1 We've already sold -- I'm not a sales person,
2 but as an engineer, I've been really baffled. We have
3 orders for over 4,600 aircraft in hand, and by the end
4 of this year, we will have delivered a thousand or over
5 a -- we've delivered over a thousand this year. There
6 will be over a thousand airplanes fitted in basically
7 the United States by the end of this year out of about
8 4,300, I think it is.

9 MR. PEREIRA: Okay. Why don't we get back to
10 the Korean Air 801? What kind of GPWS was it equipped
11 with?

12 THE WITNESS: Well, that's going -- I'll show
13 that in a couple of view foils. Let me finish this one
14 picture of enhanced, and then we'll go back and look at
15 the --

16 MR. PEREIRA: Okay.

17 THE WITNESS: The next one we have here.
18 This is a profile as you show on the wall, and this is
19 the terrain along the flight path as shown in these
20 individual terrain cells, and you can see that we would
21 have given an alert or warning or the first alert much
22 like the MSAW system, is about almost a minute. In
23 this case, it's about 50 seconds.

24 What it would tell the crew, it would show a
25 picture, bright yellow, something's wrong. I'll show

1 what that looks like, and it would say orally on an
2 automated voice call-out, Caution, Terrain, and
3 Caution, Terrain, and then it would repeat itself.

4 In this case, it would have heard Caution,
5 Terrain, Caution, Terrain, and then seven seconds
6 later, we would have heard Caution, Terrain, Caution,
7 Terrain again. That would have been followed by a red
8 set of cells which I'll show you with the oral voice
9 saying Terrain, Terrain, Pull Up, and the pull up would
10 have continued for 43 seconds or so to impact.

11 MR. PEREIRA: Don, where did you get the data
12 for that graph?

13 THE WITNESS: From yourself.

14 MR. PEREIRA: Okay. And it's based on FDR
15 data and the terrain data off the Agana map, is that
16 correct?

17 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. The cells along the
18 bottom are what -- from the ground track that you had
19 portrayed.

20 MR. PEREIRA: And you said the two warning
21 times are -- are what, again?

22 THE WITNESS: They're 52 seconds is the
23 caution before impact, which is considerably better
24 than we could ever do with most ground proximity
25 warning system times, and then 43 seconds, hard

1 warning, until impact.

2 MR. PEREIRA: And --

3 THE WITNESS: Hard warning being Terrain,
4 Terrain, Pull Up.

5 MR. PEREIRA: And what would the automated
6 call-outs have been at those points?

7 THE WITNESS: Automated call-outs?

8 MR. PEREIRA: Or the oral alerts. What --
9 could you describe those at those points?

10 THE WITNESS: Yes. The oral alert is
11 Caution, Terrain, Caution, Terrain, and then the hard
12 warning is -- what we call hard warning is Terrain,
13 Terrain, Pull Up, much like the existing GPWS.

14 MR. PEREIRA: Thank you.

15 THE WITNESS: The picture I can show you from
16 existing terrain data would look something like this,
17 and I'm sorry, in the projection system, it really
18 doesn't show that well, but the screen is black, except
19 for the colored area, the high ground of Guam, and you
20 see a touch of yellow in the left-hand corner, and as
21 the airplane's progressing down, the green would be --
22 indicate it's relatively safe, it's be careful, though,
23 because the terrain is being shown.

24 Most airports, there would be very little
25 shown here that the terrain is not -- the terrain is

1 not a significant factor.

2 Next view. Next one. The next view foil is
3 about -- as the -- as a profile or the aircraft
4 descends further and further and further. We still
5 don't see very much change.

6 The next one, please. At the 53 seconds from
7 impact, we would hear this oral Caution, Terrain, and
8 the screen would go a solid yellow indicating that
9 something's wrong with the flight path. It's too low,
10 there's terrain, something is wrong. This is something
11 we would normally ever see in normal operation, and as
12 we continue on, the next -- with the -- we continue our
13 descent further and further.

14 Next one. We actually get the red -- solid
15 red alert, which is Terrain, Pull Up, Terrain, Pull Up,
16 and as you can see for both the Cali and this
17 particular incident, if you had actually seen a
18 display, and the display is up and operating, you
19 probably wouldn't have done -- you would have probably,
20 even before you got the alert, avoided the situation
21 developing.

22 MR. PEREIRA: Dn, is this the screen that
23 would have showed up at approximately 47 seconds prior
24 to impact?

1 THE WITNESS: Yes.

2 MR. PEREIRA: Okay.

3 THE WITNESS: This screen we're looking at
4 would be like an existing color weather radar screen or
5 an EFIS, which is like a map display in front of each
6 pilot. Those exist in most airplanes today.

7 MR. PEREIRA: And this would show up on his
8 screen without requiring any pilot action for selecting
9 the system?

10 THE WITNESS: Most installations, the -- this
11 display pops up automatically and without any pilot
12 input. The pilot can select the terrain at any time,
13 and -- and as I said, one of the new signal goals of
14 EGPWS is the range the pilot has selected. So, the
15 terrain will be automatically scaled correctly for the
16 display involved.

17 Right now, -- thank you. Right now, this
18 slide is out of date, but this was the beginning of the
19 year. We have over 300 airplanes, jet airplanes now
20 flying worldwide. British Airways was the first one to
21 put it on a 747-400 over three years ago, and -- and
22 every day, the fleets are being rapidly fitted.

23 American Airlines is one that's got a very,
24 very brisk program followed by United, followed by
25 Delta, followed by just about every airline in the

1 United States.

2 Foreign operators are Lufthansa, British
3 Airways in itself is going to fit their whole fleet,
4 and the number of certifications, which is probably the
5 most pacing thing we have, the base pacing thing is by
6 the FAA, and they're trying to streamline things, and I
7 hope that they can do, but we're over about 20 now
8 certifications. We need to get to about 250 different
9 airplane types and variations on that, and as I said
10 earlier, the intent by the airlines themselves is to be
11 fitted with -- with no mandate, is to be fitted by the
12 year 2003, and as I said, we have -- we have no trouble
13 getting convincing airlines to put this kind of
14 equipment on their airplane.

15 MR. PEREIRA: Mr. Bateman, was Enhanced GPWS
16 available for Boeing 747s at the time of this accident?

17 THE WITNESS: It was available for airplanes
18 that were in production, like the 747-400. As I said,
19 British Airways had one, 757-767, on the retrofit
20 basis, but it was not available as a unit for
21 replacing, directly replacing the 737-300 unit which
22 was a Mark-7, and --

23 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Excuse me. 747-300 you're
24 talking about?

1 THE WITNESS: Yes. I'm sorry. Did I say
2 737? I'm sorry.

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: One of those 7s.

4 MR. PEREIRA: How about today, Don? Is it
5 available for that type of aircraft today?

6 THE WITNESS: Yes. In June, we will have a
7 certification for the 747 family, 200 and 300s. Boeing
8 has a program to certify as quickly as possible
9 production airplanes, and this week, I think, or maybe
10 it was the end of last week, their 777s now are
11 certified. So, anything leaving the factory will
12 sooner or later have this kind of a system on it.

13 MR. PEREIRA: So, then Korean Air's fleet of
14 classic 747s could be retrofitted after that point?

15 THE WITNESS: After June, yes.

16 MR. PEREIRA: What would a typical retrofit
17 like that cost for a Korean Air 747?

18 THE WITNESS: Well, I'd say on the order of
19 about \$80,000 kind of thing. Most of the sensors are
20 there, but they have to do -- it's the installation
21 costs. Nothing goes into an airplane that's simple.
22 It has to have some work on it.

23 MR. PEREIRA: So, that would include -- that
24 would be an approximate number for both the hardware
25 and the labor to install it?

1 THE WITNESS: That's correct, yes.

2 MR. PEREIRA: Does that include any rebates
3 for trading in their old?

4 THE WITNESS: No. If the equipment is
5 relatively new, and I think in this case, it was, there
6 -- I'm quite sure financially, our sales people would
7 make some kind of a trade-in because they're usable
8 units to sell.

9 You asked me a question about the kind of
10 equipment that was on the airplane, and -- and to -- to
11 Korean Air Lines' credit, they had updated their
12 original Mark-2, replaced it, updated it. It was a
13 little late, but they did it, and they did it in August
14 1994.

15 With that, they got additional performance.
16 They got wind shear detection alerting which is on most
17 -- I think it's a requirement on all U.S. airplanes in
18 the United States. They got radio altitude call-outs,
19 and they got better immunity to unwanted warnings.

20 Do I have one more? Yes, that one right
21 there. And as Captain Woodburn said this morning, if
22 you don't know what you got for unwanted warnings, how
23 can you improve anything?

24 This is -- with their permission, I show
25 this. This is what it was like in 1993 for amount of

1 unwanted warnings already across their fleet. They
2 were having for that time span down there. This is for
3 an A-320, but British Airways not only complained about
4 unwanted warnings but produced hard data from what we
5 call the focal program, and it was -- they have an
6 excellent relationship with their pilots. So, it was
7 not -- it was not -- it was meant just to try to
8 improve the equipment.

9 So, progressively down to three years ago, we
10 were quickly reducing the unwanted warnings, and we're
11 still getting further improvement. So, the benefit
12 that the Mark-7 that went into the Korean Air Line did
13 get the -- the benefit of those unwanted alerts.

14 MR. PEREIRA: Okay.

15 THE WITNESS: The reduction in their --

16 MR. PEREIRA: And you did a simulation for us
17 of the performance of the Mark-7 GPWS that was on
18 Korean 801. Can you summarize that simulation in your
19 findings and then advise us whether or not the
20 simulation indicated that it performed as expected?

21 THE WITNESS: Okay. Go ahead. With -- with
22 the aircraft in landing configuration and the Mark-7
23 that was installed on the airplane and a relatively
24 stable descent into the terrain that was short of the
25 runway and with no glide scope, there would have been

1 no warning or alerts.

2 Radio altitude call-outs may have reinforced
3 the pilot's situation perception of the distance to the
4 DME if he was misunderstanding the DME was not -- was -
5 - the DME was looking at was on the runway and
6 unfortunately it was not, and apparently the Smart 500
7 with procedure was apparently not used, although almost
8 all operators in the world now are using 500-foot call
9 with a procedure that if you do not have the field in
10 sight, as Captain Woodburn said, or see the runway
11 approach lights in sight, you ought to wave off.

12 I don't know why the pilots flew through the
13 last different altitude call-outs, but on the
14 simulation tests we ran, --

15 MR. PEREIRA: Don, you mentioned -- just to
16 stop you briefly.

17 THE WITNESS: Hm-hmm.

18 MR. PEREIRA: You mentioned that almost all
19 carriers are using the non-precision approach, the 500
20 missed approach practice?

21 THE WITNESS: Yes.

22 MR. PEREIRA: Could you give us an example of
23 some of the airlines that you're aware of?

24 THE WITNESS: Well, British Airways was one
25 this morning. I think he didn't say that, but that's

1 what he meant. United Airlines and -- and many of the
2 U.S. other airlines, too, are doing that. Hm-hmm.

3 MR. PEREIRA: Have -- have you as a company
4 disseminated your recommendation for that policy to
5 airlines?

6 THE WITNESS: Well, we've put this -- all our
7 equipment has this provision, and whether it's --
8 whether it's used or not depends on the operations
9 people. I feel my company hasn't been strong enough in
10 jumping up and down and maybe advising -- not advising,
11 but asking them to do this, but we have recommended it.

12 When we put what we call the Mark-6 into the
13 regional 135 operations, the 10 to 20 seats, that was
14 mandated a few years ago, we rigged it so that it had
15 to be disconnected. We built it in so the only way the
16 airline could not have a Smart 500 was to disconnect it
17 deliberately. But I think in this case, we met the
18 provisions, and I think we were responsible in putting
19 the provisions in, but maybe we didn't do a strong
20 enough case in getting to the operations people on
21 doing this.

22 But the Flight Safety Foundation and the
23 airlines themselves have talked about this, and, so, I
24 don't think it would be a surprise or something an
25 airline, if they really wanted to work it, would know

1 about.

2 MR. PEREIRA: Okay. Thank you. You can go
3 ahead to the simulation.

4 THE WITNESS: From the data you gave us, we
5 ran a flight path profile and -- and the radio
6 altitude. The radio altitude had to be derived, which
7 is unfortunate. Unfortunately, I didn't learn until
8 yesterday, but we don't even have glide scope signals
9 on -- on the FDR, which is very, very difficult for you
10 investigators, but we ran that simulation, and we got
11 one single sink rate, which correlated within half a
12 second of the actual recorded time.

13 The descent rate was momentarily building to
14 maybe something like 1,200 feet a minute, and we're
15 down to less than 200 feet above the ground. So, it
16 was -- it was a legitimate call.

17 The actual GPWS computer was recovered, as I
18 understand. I know that it was recovered, and it was
19 brought to our facility. It was -- it was
20 significantly damaged. The front panel had been
21 literally ripped off of it, and there was some damage
22 to the IO, but some data was recovered from it which I
23 think is significant.

24 The flight history for the last flight, which
25 is Flight 1, as we call it, logged in one sink rate,

1 which agreed with what was heard on the CVR. What we
2 didn't understand, there was one mysterious bank angle
3 logged in, but nothing heard on the CVR.

4 The bank angle was something you don't hear
5 until you get to about 40 degrees of bank angle, but it
6 also, when it gets down to about a 150 feet or less
7 above the ground, it shortens up to about 10 degrees.
8 So, I may -- my feeling and my -- my opinion is that
9 the system was still functioning as the airplane was
10 breaking up, and -- and -- and even though the CVR
11 didn't log it in, there may have been some broken wires
12 or something, but, anyway, it was -- the system was
13 functioning.

14 I'd like to comment on this phenomena of --
15 of -- we talk -- we talked about -- I'm an engineer,
16 and I'm a little worried about why radio altitude call-
17 outs didn't break the train of thought. I'm not a
18 human factors person, and as we said, this system
19 worked as it was designed and installed, but why would
20 a crew fly to the DME if that's a possibility?

21 I mentioned the suggestion is that if they
22 were hearing call-outs, it would -- it would reinforce
23 their thinking process that they really were going to
24 the airport, and maybe that explains some of the
25 initial call-outs but not for the latter ones.

1 Individually, I pulled out 88 international
2 airports around the Pacific Rim, just to see how many
3 times this occurred, and I also went back to a history,
4 which I collect a lot of history, and I've got over 300
5 of these things, 300 of these things, and we can go on
6 and on and on, and as the last speaker said, if we
7 don't do something, we're not going to stop it.

8 It's a spectrum of things we've got to do to
9 -- to beat it, to eliminate this as a loss of life and
10 airplanes.

11 Out of the 88 airports I looked at, only six
12 percent -- only six, that's about seven percent, had a
13 single DME located off the airport. Yes, we know
14 there's one off in Frankfurt and D.C. and so on, but
15 those airports are typically filled with other nav
16 aids, such as localizer DME or glide scope, and I've
17 listed another two out of this list of 88 were without
18 a glide scope approach aid.

19 if the glide scope had been operative at
20 Guam, then we probably wouldn't have -- maybe this
21 would not even -- it would not have been considered,
22 but the key thing is here, is a single DME integral to
23 the approach procedure and no glide scope.

24 Looking at the -- yes, the next one. Looking
25 at the -- the probability of this occurring, it's a

1 rarity. It's a rarity for these airports with an
2 instrument approach procedure to have the only
3 procedural DME located off the airport and with also no
4 operating glide scope, and the crew in this case -- it
5 would be interesting to go back and take a look, but I
6 bet they flew the majority, 99 percent of their time,
7 with no -- during just ILS approaches and no non-
8 precision approaches.

9 So, the glide scope out at Guam, it became a
10 non-precision approach with this additional hazards as
11 one can identify, the airline can identify, and the
12 CFIT control list. It's at night. It's a non-
13 precision approach. It's over unlit terrain, on and on
14 and on. These all give you assessments of -- of the
15 risk involved.

16 So, the crew certainly is not perhaps groomed
17 or -- or up to speed on non-precision approaches. That
18 doesn't mean that they're not -- not -- that they don't
19 have the skill factors or not, but they probably may
20 not be expecting it.

21 An insidious CFIT trap then to my mind is the
22 only DME navigational aid located off the airport and
23 no glide scope data. Well, what does the history show?

24 So, I went and looked at the history, and there were
25 actually two examples of where the same thing almost

1 happened to other airplanes and crews and passengers as
2 what happened at Guam.

3 One -- the first example is in Lagos,
4 Nigeria, a 747-200, and -- and the second one would be
5 the St. John, British Columbia, in Canada, with a
6 deHavilland-8.

7 Looking at St. John, the procedure for that,
8 I know you can't read that back there, but maybe you
9 could focus right on that DME in the airport. Can you
10 do that? If you can look at that, and you'll see the
11 airport is to the right of your screen at the bottom --
12 not the bottom, mid-part of the screen, and you see the
13 VOR DME, which is like at Guam, off the field. It's
14 about 5.3 miles off.

15 On this particular dark night, rainy and so
16 on, this -8 -- next view foil, please. At Fort St.
17 John was making this approach, a non-precision
18 approach. You can see that the airplane almost hit the
19 tower, the VOR and the tower on there. In fact, the
20 crew believing that the passengers actually saw the
21 tower go by above them, he -- he -- he reported it, as
22 he should have, to his airline.

23 At the time, I didn't quite understand this
24 because the airline said it was a mis-set VOR radio. I
25 truly believe that they believed, the crew believed,

1 the DME was on the field, and the reason this accident
2 was avoided or potential accident and to keep it an
3 incident was the fact that the airplane was not
4 configured for a landing. It gave a Terrain, Terrain,
5 Too Low, Terrain, and enough sufficient time anyway for
6 the airplane to be -- the flight path changed and the
7 recovery made.

8 The next -- my thanks to the operator. He's
9 trying to improvise. I show on here two procedures,
10 and the crew on this dark night -- sort of zero in on
11 the right screen -- the right part of the screen or the
12 -- yeah. That one. Just for the moment and sort of
13 zoom in on it.

14 You see this is an ILS. It's a VOR ILS.
15 It's got a DME that's off the field, and it also has a
16 DME on the localizer, and many of the fields, I
17 mentioned the Pacific Rim, have localizers, and they
18 all have DME. I wish every localizer had a DME on it,
19 but, anyway, this is what the crew expected, and when
20 they arrived, that's the life of the pilot, is the
21 unexpected. Regardless of what was NOTAMed or not
22 NOTAMed or anything else, and that's why pilots have to
23 talk to each other even before they start a trip, --
24 let's slide it over to the left. The other approach
25 procedure.

1 This is what -- without any knowledge or
2 clearance from the tower, he suddenly was faced with a
3 VOR DME approach to Runway 1-9. He had no -- he didn't
4 have the luxury of a DME on the localizer and the rest
5 of it, and the localizer was -- the glide scope was
6 flaky. I mean was -- it was moving around with a flag
7 once in awhile, and that's what alerted the crew in the
8 first place, maybe something's wrong, even though it's
9 not NOTAMed or not referenced to them.

10 The next view foil, please. This is what the
11 flight path profile would look like. They had
12 prematurely descended to the DME, and the co-pilot
13 calling out altitudes and distance to go, and -- and
14 the crew is a vigorous -- I mean the airlines are
15 vigorously enforces or practices CIM and -- and
16 believes in the non-flying pilot speaking up when it's
17 appropriate.

18 The co-pilot -- the navigator spoke up, the
19 flight engineer, which they apparently ignored because
20 they said, well, he's sitting back further, even though
21 he's spoken up, he can't see -- really see the lights,
22 which we can see, and they could see some lights, but
23 as they got down further and further, they had a
24 thousand-foot call-out, but when they got to the 500-
25 foot call-out, it's what we call a smart call-out, it's

1 normally not heard on the glide scope, with the glide
2 scope working, and you're on the glide scope, the crew
3 remembered that the procedure was to get out of there.

4 If you don't see the approach lights, you
5 don't see -- you're not stabilized and configured for a
6 landing, you wave off, and that's what Captain Woodburn
7 was saying. It's very, very important that we do this.

8 I picked two of these just from a selection
9 of a chart I made up which shows a whole bunch of
10 these. These -- this trap of misusing the DME, being
11 misread, misinterpreted or DME -- there's a DME hole in
12 general aviation airplanes, is -- is -- is much more
13 common than I ever thought it was, and let me -- when
14 we worked on the Flight Safety Foundation, we tried to
15 classify many of these into what we called traps, traps
16 that inadvertently will trap the controller or a pilot,
17 and that's my -- what I wanted to comment about anyway
18 at the Guam situation.

19 MR. PEREIRA: Okay. In the case of an
20 aircraft, an old aircraft, like a 727, for example,
21 that doesn't have an FMS or a GPS, how do you go about
22 completing the installation of Enhanced Ground
23 Proximity?

24 THE WITNESS: Well, GPS is progressive,
25 rapidly progressing to all the airplanes. It's still

1 expensive, but in many units, we're putting a very low-
2 cost engine, we call it engines, about the size of this
3 credit card. Inside it is the whole GPS receiver, and
4 we -- the cost is less than a thousand dollars to buy
5 and put in there. We obviously want to make a profit
6 on that, but the biggest thing to the airline or the
7 most expensive thing in the airplane is to find room
8 for an antenna on the roof, but it's a minor thing, and
9 many airlines are going to do that, are doing that.

10 MR. PEREIRA: And if an aircraft doesn't have
11 an EFIS display or weather radar display, is there
12 another display type that can be installed?

13 THE WITNESS: Well, the minority of airplanes
14 that don't have some kind of color display is -- there
15 are a few. The old 727s and some of the DC-10s, maybe.
16 But ourselves and others are offering very relatively
17 little cost -- nothing's low cost in the aviation
18 business, but very small displays that can be located
19 in a central position or a key position for the pilots,
20 and that's -- a lot of airlines are doing that, too,
21 are thinking about that.

22 MR. PEREIRA: Similar to some of the small
23 TCAS displays maybe?

24 THE WITNESS: Yes, it's about -- what do you
25 call it? A 3 ATI. It's -- it's about -- it's about

1 three inches diagonally, and there's a larger one
2 that's a five-inch.

3 Amazingly, the general aviation corporate
4 planes, they're putting these things, enhanced systems,
5 into their airplanes faster than the airlines are with
6 no mandate. It's wonderful.

7 MR. PEREIRA: With everything going so fast
8 as far as demand, are there any problems with meeting
9 the demand regarding production or certification?

10 THE WITNESS: No. As I said earlier, we've
11 shipped -- I mean we've shipped over a thousand units
12 earlier in the year. This year, we'll ship another --
13 easily another 2 -- 2 to 3,000 units to satisfy the on-
14 going orders, and that's more -- you know, you add that
15 up, that's more than half -- by the end of this year,
16 we will have more than half the American airline fleet
17 fitted, if we can get some help and cooperation from
18 the FAA.

19 MR. PEREIRA: Do you mean on the STC process?

20 THE WITNESS: Yes. Certification process is
21 turning out to be the bottleneck, and we -- we need to
22 do more as a country to encourage other countries to --
23 many of the countries do not have an experienced
24 certification branch. They rely -- whether we like it
25 or not, they look to the United States as a leader.

1 Sometimes we're a rather shabby leader, but we're a
2 leader, and a leader in the aviation business, and we
3 need to make the FAA -- try to help those people.
4 We're not asking for extra work.

5 As someone said this morning, many of the FAA
6 people are good people. Most of them are good people,
7 and most are over-worked, but we got to find a way of
8 doing it, if we're going to remain the leader in
9 safety.

10 MR. PEREIRA: Can you describe some of the
11 STC problems, and what you think the FAA can do to --

12 THE WITNESS: We still have only one person
13 in the Seattle office that's handling these
14 certifications. We need to streamline the process and
15 make it grow. It's easy to throw bricks at the FAA.
16 We are part of the problem, too. We need to be -- we
17 need a memorandum of understanding, an agreement, with
18 the FAA so we can use more informed engineers and so on
19 to get this equipment in.

20 MR. PEREIRA: You mean like a DER kind of
21 situation?

22 THE WITNESS: Yes, a designated engineering
23 representative sort of thing, and it's working. It's --
24 -- but it's -- I'm -- you know, I'm a very impetuous --
25 I get -- I want to go and get it done right away, and I

1 think in most cases, our customers, the airlines, want
2 to do that, too. So, I'm hoping that the FAA can help.

3 The FAA's becoming more and more expensive to
4 get something approved and certified, but I know
5 they're trying, but they need almost -- bad nights or
6 bad days, I go back to saying we need a revolutionary
7 reform going on in the FAA, but I think they're trying
8 to help.

9 MR. PEREIRA: Could you just briefly explain
10 for some of the audience the reason why an STC is
11 there? If you design this Enhanced GPWS, and it gets
12 certified for one airplane type, why is there a delay
13 in certification for another airplane type?

14 THE WITNESS: I think it's -- it's
15 unfamiliarity, ignorance, on our part. We should be
16 out training and making more people more aware what the
17 system is, and there's a great conservatism. It's
18 almost like tar or molasses in trying to get some
19 changes made in regulatory bodies.

20 As the previous speaker spoke, I feel very
21 strongly if we don't get our regulatory bodies involved
22 in the safety process, really working with us at the --
23 at the start of these things, there's no commitment on
24 their part. It's not going to happen.

1 Five years ago, the FAA didn't -- they
2 believed there was no CFIT risk. The NTSB didn't. But
3 the FAA didn't think there was any kind of risk. It
4 took Cali, it took -- even the 129 accidents that were
5 going in and out of the United States with FAA people
6 on board, it still didn't get their attention, and,
7 finally, when we had Dubrovnik with a 737 carrying the
8 Secretary of Commerce and a bunch of business people,
9 then it really got started to get the attention, but up
10 to then, -- everybody wants to get out on the bandwagon
11 now, but we need fundamental regulatory involvement
12 right up front, and the Flight Safety Foundation is the
13 place to start with.

14 As the previous speaker said, we couldn't get
15 one air traffic controller or manager from the FAA to
16 come, and here we had a separate committee on ATC. We
17 couldn't get many of the world body to -- there was --
18 there was this great wall between air traffic control
19 and flight standards or flight operations, and this
20 shouldn't be.

21 I'm ashamed. I've tried to phone and get
22 information from the FAA on the MSAW system because
23 MSAW system, and what we're doing are very, very
24 similar, and very, very similar, we have -- we must
25 have similar problems, and we have similar problems,

1 maybe we could collectively work on them, and we've
2 done a lousy job on that.

3 I was very impressed with the previous
4 witness two days ago that said they're ready to do
5 something about MSAW. I know I've wandered off a
6 little bit, but MSAW has saved a lot of airplanes in
7 the United States, and shame on us for not doing flight
8 inspections on a system that's put in there.

9 If we were to do that in our equipment, we
10 would be hammered so hard on software, the lack of
11 software and everything else that they did, we would
12 financially pay a terrible price for that and also a
13 moral price for it.

14 MSAW is something that's here, and I have --
15 we have no business leverage on this or -- the -- the
16 rules -- air traffic control radar, almost all of it
17 has got the hooks in for the United States MSAW system.

18 Not one country -- okay. There may be an exception,
19 but in my eyes, one country has really vigorously
20 worked this.

21 The United States has tried to help, I
22 believe, and I believe the FAA could make it even
23 better if they could write the thing simpler about what
24 the system is, but every country in the world should do
25 this. Shame, shame, shame on any country who doesn't

1 utilize the existing MSAW, the equipment's in place.

2 We're going to -- we're losing lives out
3 there, and MSAW is a wonderful system. It's been
4 bought, it's there, and the radar's been bought and
5 paid for. It could be made to work very easily just
6 with some determination.

7 I know there's a political problem. The --
8 you know, in some countries, the controller has no
9 protection against -- if he makes an error, and it
10 results in an airplane being piled in, he can be held -
11 - charged with manslaughter. Pilots can be thrown in
12 jail. We don't have the kind of environment that --
13 that kind of legal protection that should be worked out
14 for those MSAW people -- I mean the controllers and for
15 the pilots.

16 We have to work, unfortunately, in a very
17 harsh environment, but MSAW is something that could be
18 done and would save airplanes today.

19 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Let me just make a comment
20 about the STC in a broader sort of look at this issue.

21 I took the opportunity at the last break to -- to talk
22 to the FAA about this. I think that they've gotten the
23 message in terms of the -- the kinds of cooperative
24 efforts that are necessary here, and I don't -- while
25 the FAA certainly has its share, as you pointed out,

1 there are all of us that have conservative people and
2 don't know everything that we can be doing, but I -- I
3 do think that -- that it's particularly incumbent on
4 the regulatory authorities to be -- to be active in
5 this area, and where you have -- where you have a
6 situation with a major effort going on and the activity
7 that is killing the most people in the world and to not
8 have the regulatory authority and the air traffic
9 control authority actively involved is -- is -- is
10 unfortunate at the very weakest way that one could put
11 it.

12 So, I think that the FAA is getting this
13 message, and I certainly think that the -- the
14 Administrator of the FAA is certainly in everything
15 that she says and does very philosophically and
16 actively involved in -- in these cooperative kinds of
17 efforts that -- that this represents.

18 So, I'm confident, and I hope, and I
19 certainly personally will -- will be involved in trying
20 to make sure that -- that we all go forward with this,
21 including the STC issue.

22 THE WITNESS: It's -- the industry really --
23 the airlines, they're really sincere about improving
24 safety. Well, maybe some aren't, but most are, and
25 you're right, the FAA, the manufacturers of the air

1 frames, they all have a very positive outlook on this,
2 and there's many people in the FAA have a very positive
3 outlook on this, too, and all we need to do is
4 cooperate and get -- and do it. That's all.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Charlie, do you have more
6 questions?

7 MR. PEREIRA: Yeah. I have a few more. Do
8 you think -- you mentioned that MSAW is very important,
9 and obviously GPWS is very important. Do you think
10 there could be some better coordination on the
11 technical level or a committee level between the people
12 responsible for GPWS and MSAW?

13 Everyone seems to have taken a separate
14 isolated approach in terms of systems to this point.
15 Do you think perhaps the Flight Safety Steering
16 Committee or some other steering committee could bring
17 those two efforts together to try to see how the -- you
18 mentioned we have a five-degree climb angle for the one
19 warning envelope and 60-degree climb angle for the
20 other envelope.

21 Do you think that there could be some
22 coordination that could help improve each side?

23 THE WITNESS: Well, this meeting was very --
24 this hearing is very informal to me. I didn't realize
25 the MSAW system was not working, actually deliberately

1 almost disconnected, if not that.

2 I just didn't realize that, and I make a
3 personal vow to myself that I'm going to talk to the
4 FAA about the two systems, try and drag them out
5 together. We -- we can do a lot of good together
6 talking about this. They have the same kind of system
7 as we have, and we just -- it's unfortunate, and I --
8 and I accept some responsibility for not talking, but I
9 just didn't realize they were restructuring and
10 reformulating the processes for MSAW.

11 MR. PEREIRA: And then I have one last
12 question. I just wanted to verify. We didn't get to
13 touch on it, but the simulation that you performed for
14 the Korean Mark-7 GPWS, did that indicate that it
15 functioned properly and as expected?

16 THE WITNESS: Yes. It logged in the fact
17 that there had been a sink rate alert. You had a sink
18 rate alert on -- on the -- on the CVR, and that all
19 correlates for -- well. The system, I hate to say
20 this, worked as designed.

21 The thing we really didn't know, as I pointed
22 out, we need to know where the end of the runway was,
23 and we're getting that information now, and that
24 enables us to -- to provide something better. But at
25 the time we had, the equipment did its job and

1 functioned as it was designed.

2 MR. PEREIRA: Okay. Thank you, Mr. Bateman.

3 I have no further questions.

4 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Can I just make another
5 editorial comment here because it's interesting that
6 Don's here. The importance of this hearing and -- and
7 conferences and meetings and having people at -- at
8 these kinds of events. I mean we've all got to make an
9 effort to have our people out in the community talking
10 with other people, and I'll cite a personal instance.

11 Don, I flew with him in the -- in the King
12 Aire where they demonstrated this, and as we were
13 flying back, I asked him if he knew John McCarthy, who
14 at that point was at the National Center for
15 Atmospheric Research, doing very similar kinds of work.

16 They were working on displays for weather for pilots
17 on glass displays in aircraft, and it turned out that
18 these two people knew of one another but didn't know
19 one another.

20 So, we ended up because of this generating a
21 meeting between -- between Don and John McCarthy, and I
22 believe they're now working together to have a
23 coordinated effort to display of weather and terrain
24 data on display. So, we've all got to be out talking
25 to people and communicating and being aggressive.

1 We can't say I can't afford to send somebody
2 to this meeting because he'll be out of the office for
3 two and a half days, and it will cost \$300. We can't
4 afford as organizations, whether it's the FAA, the
5 NTSB, or Allied or whoever it is, not to have our
6 people out talking with other people, because this is
7 showing us what we're losing and what we're wasting.

8 Korean Air?

9 CAPTAIN KIM: Thank you, Don, for giving us a
10 chance to speak on a few matters.

11 Mr. Chairman, we've had some difficulties in
12 the translation and live interpretation going on, and
13 for the benefit of the people who will not have access
14 to the recorded transcript, we would like to clarify
15 just a few points. Do we have your permission?

16 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Briefly.

17 CAPTAIN KIM: Briefly. You used the word
18 "retrofit". Would you please explain that in a few
19 words, what retrofit process involves?

20 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Do you want me to explain
21 it or Mr. Bateman to explain it?

22 CAPTAIN KIM: Don, would you please explain
23 it for us?

24 THE WITNESS: Well, retrofit to me is -- is
25 an older -- an airplane that's been delivered by the

1 aircraft manufacturer and is in service, and, so, if
2 you want to put something new on it, that's part of
3 retrofit. You may be retrofitting older equipment
4 that's on -- an older system on the airplane. That's
5 what retrofit in my mind means, is replacing.

6 CAPTAIN KIM: And I remember, if I may quote,
7 you said it was to Korean Air Lines' credit to -- to
8 have updated the Mark-2 system to the Mark-7 which is
9 the most current model available for the accident
10 airplane, is that correct, sir?

11 THE WITNESS: That's correct.

12 CAPTAIN KIM: Thank you. And then just two
13 points on the comments you made. You said about 99
14 percent of the precision -- the pilots would fly 99
15 percent precision approach and with no non-precision
16 approach experience. Would you say that's a conjecture
17 on your part?

18 THE WITNESS: Well, the number of nav aids
19 and the preference by most pilots to fly a glide scope
20 is very high. It may be not 99 percent. It's going to
21 vary, depending on your route and the particular
22 airport you go to. It's amazing how well equipped the
23 international airports are equipped.

24 CAPTAIN KIM: Right. Would you say that the
25 99 percent figure that you quoted differs from the

1 facts established on the first day of and the second
2 day of this hearing?

3 THE WITNESS: What facts was that?

4 CAPTAIN KIM: About the testimony of our
5 witnesses regarding the exposure to non-precision
6 approaches.

7 THE WITNESS: Well, I don't want to accuse
8 them of -- of giving erroneous testimony or anything
9 because I think they probably gave what they thought
10 was correct testimony.

11 I did personally look at 88 airports around
12 the Pacific Rim. So, my observations were based on
13 those.

14 CAPTAIN KIM: Thank you. And the Smart 500,
15 regarding that, you said almost all carriers use this
16 procedure, is that correct, sir?

17 THE WITNESS: Yes.

18 CAPTAIN KIM: And then how many carriers are
19 you aware of throughout the world?

20 THE WITNESS: I think it's sort of like
21 assume it's been done. We mentioned British Airways,
22 United. I've never paid much attention to this. You
23 can say all the small 10 to 20 seat airplanes, they're
24 all using it, too. It's become a -- it came out of the
25 Flight Safety Foundation.

1 The first carrier I know that used it was --
2 was Pan American Airlines.

3 CAPTAIN KIM: Would you allow me the
4 disagreement with your comment about almost all
5 worldwide carriers have used the Smart 500 procedure?
6 Would you allow me that --

7 THE WITNESS: Yeah. You can disagree, if you
8 want.

9 CAPTAIN KIM: Okay. Thank you. No further
10 comments. Thank you.

11 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Barton?

12 MR. EDWARD MONTGOMERY: No questions, Mr.
13 Chairman.

14 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Boeing?

15 MR. DARCEY: No questions, Mr. Chairman.

16 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: KCAB?

17 MR. LEE: Thank you. We have no questions.

18 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: FAA?

19 MR. DONNER: No questions.

20 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: NATCA?

21 MR. MOTE: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. No
22 questions.

23 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Guam?

24 MR. DERVISH: Thank you. No questions.

1 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Feith?

2 MR. FEITH: No questions.

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Cariseo?

4 MR. CARISEO: No.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Berman?

6 MR. BERMAN: Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

7 Mr. Bateman, would you please comment on the
8 procedure for GPWS alerts that doesn't mandate a go-
9 around if a sink rate or terrain secondary-type warning
10 is received in instrument conditions? Have you -- are
11 you aware of any air carriers that -- that do have such
12 a mandatory go-around?

13 THE WITNESS: Well, I can speak my opinion, I
14 guess. When we first started with GPWS, all we had was
15 a whirling tone that something was wrong, and then when
16 Boeing really got started to pursue trying to make this
17 piece of effective safety system, we added in the 747
18 days the word "pull-up", and a lot of the procedures
19 then were rather dogmatic.

20 Then we introduced voices, which Mark-2
21 designs or second-generation designs that are reflected
22 where we had sink rates, glide slope alerts and so on,
23 and -- and these -- depending on the situation, my
24 opinion is anyway you may -- you may mis-correct the
25 flight path if you have -- if you have assessed the

1 situation in the cockpit, everything's all right, you
2 maybe can see outside, it's probably a modest -- it's
3 -- it's not a significant thing that would call for a
4 go-around or missed approach.

5 But if you got a sink rate in the dark, and
6 you don't see the ground, you better think twice. You
7 better assess your situation, assess the
8 instrumentation you have to work with, and -- and how
9 far you are in the approach. You may want to get out
10 of there right away, and some of the airlines, I think,
11 are teaching that. I'm not an expert in flight
12 operational matters, though I am a pilot, but I think
13 some of the -- I think all the airlines would -- would
14 like the crews to take deliberate best approach
15 procedures on hearing an alert that they shouldn't have
16 -- should not be hearing at that point in the approach.

17 Glide scope is heard quite often, but it's --
18 it's an advisory. There's usually sufficient time, but
19 in most cases, they take corrective action to get back
20 on the glide scope, and that's the end of it.

21 MR. BERMAN: Thank you, sir. I just wanted
22 to get a clarification of one of the -- one of your
23 statistics from a few minutes ago. I'd like to know of
24 the two airports that you mentioned that had an off-
25 site DME and no glide scope installed in the Pacific

1 Rim, on those two airports, is the off-site DME
2 integral to the non-precision approach that is there at
3 the airport?

4 In other words, is it used for identifying
5 the final approach fix or a step-down fix?

6 THE WITNESS: Yes. I brought some notes
7 along, but I don't have them with me, but there is a
8 few of those, yes.

9 MR. BERMAN: Okay. A few of those approaches
10 but only at those two airports, I guess?

11 THE WITNESS: Yes.

12 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Mr. Bateman, I'd like to
13 put up an exhibit which is 9-D, Page 1. I'm sorry you
14 don't have it in your package probably, but you'll see
15 it on your screen momentarily. Okay. 9-D.

16 If you'll just pan down a little bit, Ted.
17 Yeah. Right there to those two columns. That's the --
18 that's the results of the post-accident testing of the
19 accident ground proximity warning system unit, and it
20 has a counter of the warnings that had been received by
21 that unit during the preceding, I guess, 5,442 hours of
22 operation.

23 We note that there are a number of warnings
24 that had been received in the history and -- and
25 clearly understand some of those may have been due to

1 testing conditions and other -- other issues, and I'd
2 like to get your comments on -- on this history as you
3 see it.

4 THE WITNESS: Well, you -- you put your
5 finger on the first item. I mean the first thing I
6 would respond with is quite often, the airline or the
7 installation time or inspection may deliberately
8 simulate conditions to get the alerts to occur. In
9 this case, sink rates. They're very difficult to run,
10 but where the radar altitude is closing very rapidly,
11 so they had to test that.

12 So, you know, descent after take-off, those
13 sink warnings, there's three of them shown here, that
14 would be very -- very, very rare, if ever. I would
15 think this is just a test condition that they did.

16 MR. BERMAN: Okay. I'm sorry. Go ahead.

17 THE WITNESS: Looking at this information
18 here, it shows that there were 8 -- roughly 860
19 flights. I assume -- I don't know if this particular
20 computer is the one that was installed at the time of
21 -- of -- in August 1994, but it probably was. It may
22 have been replaced. There's no indication of -- on --
23 it's a very crude warning counter.

24 MR. BERMAN: Are there different modes tested
25 individually or -- or would you expect the mode counter

1 to go up in any particular pattern for a GPWS test as
2 you require them to be tested?

3 THE WITNESS: Oh, it depends on the test
4 sequence they ran on the ground. Normally, when you do
5 a self-test from the cockpit, it doesn't do anything to
6 this flight history. So, this would -- when I look at
7 this, this has actually been -- these alerts have
8 either been caused in operation, real-flight operation,
9 or in testing, and it's a very crude indication.

10 We were interested in -- in the flight hours
11 and the hours operating time and the departures to
12 help.

13 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Thank you very much. I
14 have no further questions.

15 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Montgomery?

16 MR. MONTY MONTGOMERY: Thank you, Mr.
17 Chairman.

18 Mr. Bateman, this looks to -- the -- the
19 enhanced system looks to be a very -- very comforting
20 item for a crew to have. It gives them an excellent
21 sense of where they are relative to -- to dangers and
22 does a lot of the worrying for them.

23 How does your system respond or -- or, better
24 phrased, how would -- how would a crew know if they're
25 flying into an airport where you do not have the

1 digital terrain data available and the system
2 performance is not as good as it could be?

3 THE WITNESS: That's a good question. In
4 those areas I showed in blue, you were getting the
5 airplane -- they would be showing what we call a purple
6 haze. It's a light background to indicate the terrain
7 is not there.

8 But as the airplanes have gone into service,
9 and especially with Enhanced GPWS and especially those
10 airplanes that are in corporate -- where they go to
11 really strange places, they don't like to talk about
12 them, we have discovered a few airports that were not
13 -- that -- that -- that they're not in an airport
14 database anywhere. So, we had to add them.

15 Typically they're like inside the area or
16 some places. India was one place, but in schedule
17 operations, it's been a rarity that we're missing
18 airports.

19 One -- the Russians are opening up more and
20 more civil fields for civil -- military fields for
21 civil use. So, we've been surprised. Perm -- Perm in
22 the Urals was one that Lufthansa ran into. So, we have
23 to make quick update to add the runway ends, and when
24 you -- every time you add a runway, you want to go into
25 more detailed terrain around them, and, so, we've done

1 that.

2 Does that answer your question?

3 MR. MONTY MONTGOMERY: Yes. Thank you very
4 much. That's all I have, Mr. Chairman.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Thank you very much, Mr.
6 Bateman.

7 THE WITNESS: You're welcome.

8 (Whereupon, the witness was excused.)

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I don't think thatt's
10 practical to try to finish before lunch. So, we will
11 now break for lunch. It's quarter of 1. We will be
12 back here in an hour, please, quarter to 2.

13 (Whereupon, at 12:45 p.m., the hearing was
14 recessed, to reconvene this same day, Thursday, March
15 26th, 1998, at 1:45 p.m.)

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

A F T E R N O O N S E S S I O N

1:45 p.m.

CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: All right. Our next
witness is Mr. William Henderson, Manager, Western
Flight Procedures Development Branch, FAA Regional
Office, in Los Angeles.

Whereupon,

WILLIAM HENDERSON

having been first duly sworn, was called as a witness
herein and was examined and testified as follows:

TESTIMONY OF WILLIAM HENDERSON

1 MANAGER, WESTERN FLIGHT PROCEDURES DEVELOPMENT BRANCH
2 FAA WESTERN PACIFIC REGIONAL OFFICE
3 LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA

4 MR. SCHLEEDE: Mr. Henderson, please give us
5 your full name and business address for the record.

6 THE WITNESS: My name is William Henderson.
7 I'm the Manager of the Western Flight Procedures
8 Development Branch.

9 MR. SCHLEEDE: I'm sorry. I missed the -- I
10 didn't quite hear.

11 THE WITNESS: I'm William Henderson, the
12 Manager of the Western Flight Procedures Development
13 Branch, and the office is in Oklahoma City, with the
14 Mike Moroney Aeronautical Center, at 6400 South
15 McArthur in Oklahoma City.

16 MR. SCHLEEDE: And what is your position with
17 the FAA?

18 THE WITNESS: I'm the Manager with the
19 Western Flight Procedures Development Branch. AVN-120
20 is --

21 MR. SCHLEEDE: Could you give us a brief
22 summary of your education and experience that qualifies
23 you for your current position?

24 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. My formal education
25 was in aviation business management with a semester of

1 graduate work. I am an ATP pilot. I've got 12 years
2 of experience with the procedures specialty in the FAA.

3 I was a flight check pilot in procedures development,
4 a specialty doing both things.

5 I was in the Southwest Region as an aviation
6 safety inspector in the procedures and a retired Air
7 Force pilot, jet instructor for 10+ years. I was the
8 chief of the Standardization and Evaluation and the
9 evaluation check pilot and the chief of the Instructor
10 Pilot Upgrading.

11 I was also an Air Force accident
12 investigator. I was a simulator instructor. After
13 retirement, I became a corporate pilot. After that, I
14 was a demo pilot for one of the largest GA distributors
15 in the country, owned my aircraft, sales, and am
16 currently an aircraft owner and an active pilot and
17 have been since 1953.

18 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you. And when you
19 mentioned procedures in the earlier part of your
20 background, what -- in what -- what type of procedures?

21 Could you elaborate?

22 THE WITNESS: Okay. Instrument approach
23 procedures.

24 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you. Mr. -- Captain
25 Misencik, proceed.

1 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Good afternoon, Mr.
2 Henderson. How big of a staff do you have in your
3 office?

4 THE WITNESS: I have a staff of 35 that is in
5 four different physical locations.

6 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: How many of those people
7 are rated pilots?

8 THE WITNESS: I have, including myself,
9 there's 13.

10 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I see. Could you briefly
11 describe your duties for us?

12 THE WITNESS: I manage the resources in those
13 four groups, and in the instrument approach procedures
14 specialty is what we work at, designing the procedure,
15 setting it for flight check, and sending it for
16 charting.

17 We also do the OE program, which is Obstacle
18 Evaluations, of anything in our areas of responsibility
19 that's to be constructed, and air space analysis, and
20 environmental issues that become with the approach
21 procedures that we don't need or the current
22 environmental study, if we need one, or we can do an
23 exclusion to it.

24 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I see. What documents
25 provide guidance for your duties?

1 THE WITNESS: Well, the two main manuals are
2 the TERPS manual, which is 8263(b) and 8260.19(c),
3 which is an FAA manual, and several other orders of the
4 86 series for some military or 15(c), 32(c), 34, 36(a)
5 for MLS, 38(a) is for GPS, 37 is for helicopter GPS or
6 MLS for helicopters, and 42, 44 for nav departures, 46
7 for instrument departures, and several others, but the
8 -- the two main manuals are TERPS, that is for all
9 joint services in the states that use instrument
10 approaches.

11 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Could you briefly explain
12 for us the concept of TERPS?

13 THE WITNESS: TERPS, before I got into it, I
14 believe it was about '68, it was adopted as a standards
15 for all instrument approaches in the national air space
16 system used by all of the users, the FAA, for the
17 civilians, the Army, the U.S. Air Force, the U.S. Navy,
18 and the Coast Guard.

19 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: And could you also
20 describe the process by which an approach is --
21 approach procedure is developed and certified?

22 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. The approach can
23 originate from any requested source, airport owners,
24 from pilots, air carriers or any other user. We funnel
25 all of those through our flight procedures offices

1 which are located at the regional headquarters to do
2 the initial contact because we always like to -- we
3 want the airport owner-operator to be involved, that he
4 or she would want that approach to their airport. That
5 requires a feasibility study to be done to see if we
6 could possibly do one.

7 The additional coordination is -- the initial
8 coordination is started there with all of the users at
9 the different services, and the airport owner, air
10 traffic AF airports, flight standards, the -- the user
11 that requested that the owner of the airport, and if
12 they have any pilot inputs at that time to see if we
13 can do them.

14 They continue that process and gather the
15 data for the airport, so we have a firm good data to
16 use, see if it is feasible. The environmental issues
17 need to be looked at, as I said before, to see if we
18 could have an approach and be friendly with keeping the
19 noise down and environmentally.

20 As I am responsible for signing an exception
21 to a complete environmental and we can do that if it
22 normally follows the same traffic that flying in there
23 without any increase in traffic as most instrument
24 approaches do not increase it a lot.

1 After the complete package is -- initial
2 coordination is accepted, and it's feasible, the
3 environmental -- it's then sent to Oklahoma City where
4 our specialists research the -- the procedure, seeing
5 that we do have the good data, the best maps available,
6 the largest -- the best maps, I mean the largest scale
7 that we can use and have available, and design the
8 procedure according to TERPS.

9 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Excuse me. Mr. Henderson,
10 could you maybe just get right down to the specifics of
11 how you -- how you -- what -- how you construct a -- an
12 approach procedure? What data?

13 Like, for example, the -- could you tell us
14 how the 8260 forms fit into the process?

15 THE WITNESS: The 8260 form is the form that
16 is filled out that has all of the pertinent data from
17 the terminal areas to the missed approach and the
18 final. It's put on that form, sent to flight check,
19 flight check certification, and before it goes to
20 flight check, it goes through our quality assurance
21 staff to see that we're in compliance, and we go to
22 flight check, flight checks, back for my signature,
23 sent to NFDC, put on a transmittal letter, and sent to
24 NOS for publication.

1 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Okay. Could you tell us
2 how the obstructions are located, and how their heights
3 are determined for an approach procedure?

4 THE WITNESS: Map study and our instrument
5 approach procedure's automated base that is updated
6 weekly with all the obstructions that -- in a
7 particular area.

8 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: How often are these
9 obstruction heights checked?

10 THE WITNESS: The obstruction heights are
11 verified on our flight inspection, and as you heard
12 earlier, this flight inspection varies on different
13 approaches and time when the reoccurring, and they're
14 verified each time, flight checked, that the obstacle
15 height is still there, and it's the same.

16 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Is there any way to check
17 on unauthorized or how -- how -- how is that taken into
18 account, unauthorized construction or -- or tree
19 growth?

20 THE WITNESS: Well, the OE program I spoke of
21 awhile ago is a requirement that anything built on a
22 100:1 plain from an airport, there's a federal order
23 requiring it be filed with the FAA, and anything over
24 200 feet any place is required. Have the specialists
25 in areas that -- of responsibility in, say, the Western

1 Pacific Region that -- put our inputs into that program
2 for every obstruction known.

3 If it's unauthorized, it's built, it's found
4 on our flight check or if we have the pilot community
5 will call in and say they see something being built,
6 and we will investigate it, and it goes back to our OE
7 program for that.

8 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Okay. Thank you. When
9 you develop an approach procedure, what determines the
10 segment altitudes? Is obstruction clearance the only
11 criteria?

12 THE WITNESS: No, sir. That is the minimum
13 requirement, is obstructions. Then we have air space,
14 environmental as I talked about, air traffic needs,
15 users needs, and it just must fit the puzzle with
16 everything else around it.

17 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: When -- for example, at
18 Guam, we have an ILS procedure and a localizer
19 procedure. Are the segment altitudes for the protected
20 air space the same for both procedures?

21 THE WITNESS: No, sir. The altitudes are
22 computed differently. The area is slightly different
23 for the two approaches because the trapezoid or the
24 area of protected air space from the final approach
25 fits in is slightly different, in the missed approach

1 is slightly different.

2 We use the worse case for both of them, could
3 use the missed approach on -- for the ILS and
4 localizer, but the localizer has a one required
5 obstruction height all the way through it, and the ILS
6 is the best we can do, and it gets down to which we
7 know it was, 200 feet of a height above the airport for
8 the DH.

9 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I see. The -- would you
10 say the ILS or the localizer has -- which one would
11 give the -- the greater obstacle protection?

12 THE WITNESS: Well, the ILS because of the
13 glide scope is a different protection. The localizer
14 would have a standard of 250 feet versus the 200 feet.

15 So, you would have more height above an obstacle with
16 the localizer, but you don't have the glide scope.
17 Glide angle is --

18 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I see. Going back to the
19 Guam ILS approach, are you familiar with the origin of
20 the -- the ILS 6 left approach at Guam? Was that
21 originally a military approach turned over?

22 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. That approach to my
23 -- best of my knowledge, and I can find out, has been
24 there 20+ years. It was -- the ILS was commissioned in
25 1972, basically the same approach. The closing of

1 different military bases throughout the world have
2 opened up some of those airports for civil use. That
3 airport also was a joint use civil use for all the time
4 that I can -- back to those 20+ years that I've been
5 able to find out.

6 But we took over the responsibility to design
7 the procedure, and the closing was in '95. We got the
8 procedure in '96, and it was an agreement that the Navy
9 would keep the procedures in until the FAA could
10 produce them because of the user's needs.

11 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Are the TERPS applied
12 differently at military airports, civilian airports, or
13 joint use airports?

14 THE WITNESS: No, sir. The standard TERPS
15 for all the services that use them, the military and
16 the FAA, are all the same. The difference being a
17 military has an operational advantage to do -- to
18 change something in TERPS, they can do that with their
19 operational advantage, but the approach would be noted
20 as not for the civils to use.

21 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Okay. Just to make sure I
22 understand that, you're saying that the military could
23 have a special approach, but that wouldn't be available
24 to -- to the civilians on a regular basis? Is that
25 what you're saying?

1 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. That's -- and it
2 would be noted that the civilians would not use that --
3 could not use that approach.

4 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: When a military airport
5 becomes a civilian airport, like Guam did, was turned
6 over, what time table do you have to have it flight
7 tested, have the procedures flight tested to make sure
8 they're in compliance with your -- your regulations?

9 THE WITNESS: We look at the procedure, and
10 if -- we assume that it's -- it's all right until we
11 find there was something different, and we would
12 develop it. If we leave the procedure there, if it was
13 needed, and there is no noted note for not civil use,
14 that they could use it as they were doing it before.

15 When we developed the procedure, we will
16 design it. If we find any flaws at that time, we would
17 immediately correct them.

18 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Has Guam been flight
19 tested since it's been turned over?

20 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir.

21 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Do you recall how many
22 times or the last time that it's been flight tested?

23 THE WITNESS: I believe the last time at Guam
24 was right after the accident, and that was a special
25 was done, and that is not in my area of expertise of

1 tracking flight inspection, except that it was done and
2 commissioned.

3 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Was it done since it was
4 turned over but before the accident?

5 THE WITNESS: I believe it was. Yes, sir. I
6 don't have those -- those dates.

7 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: That would be under --
8 where would we find that? On 8260 forms or --

9 THE WITNESS: You'd find some on the 8260
10 forms and would find it in the flight inspection
11 operations that become the state's permanent records.

12 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I imagine you've studied
13 the -- the approaches at Guam. Do all the approaches -
14 - are they in compliance with -- with the TERPS
15 regulations?

16 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir, they are today, and
17 they were when we published them. When we looked at
18 those, there were two that were noted with high descent
19 angles, higher than standard, that we changed the
20 procedure to be the VOR. It was to 6 left, it was a
21 straight-in with a higher-than-standard descent rate,
22 and we changed that to a VOR alpha.

23 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: The -- the approach plate
24 prior to the one that was in effect during the accident
25 showed a -- a lower VOR crossing altitude than at the

1 time of the accident. What necessitated raising that
2 -- that altitude?

3 THE WITNESS: My recall ~~that~~ we had two
4 changes on that approach. We have a requirement for
5 the civil areas to have an air space requirement in the
6 intermediate just prior to the final approach fix of a
7 thousand feet above the ground, and then the
8 obstruction that we discovered when we did the
9 procedure raised the minimum at the VOR.

10 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: When you're developing or
11 certifying an airport, do you normally solicit user
12 group input into that process?

13 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. We do that in the --
14 two times, basically. The original coordination from
15 my office that's in the regions, and we send out
16 requests at that time from the airport owner and -- and
17 any of the pilot information that they may have.

18 Before the procedure is published, we send it
19 for coordination with all of the user groups and give
20 them 20 calendar days, and we use a standard 30 days
21 before we would do any action on the procedure to give
22 them a chance to review it and answer to us if they
23 have any questions or recommended changes or --

24 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: What would be some
25 examples of some of the user groups you solicit input

1 from?

2 THE WITNESS: We use ALPA, ATA, AOPA, the
3 American Airlines, ANR, whatever their user group of
4 the American, the air traffic folks, the airport
5 operators and the owners.

6 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Do you have -- were there
7 any significant comments or criticisms from other user
8 groups when the Guam approach procedures were being
9 turned over from the Navy and being certified by your
10 office?

11 THE WITNESS: No, sir. We had none, and
12 checked with the Navy if they had any known users
13 complaints or problems, and they had none.

14 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: When you're -- when the
15 flight procedures office was transferred from the
16 flight -- FAA Flight Standards to Air Traffic Services,
17 how did that affect the way you did business, Mr.
18 Henderson?

19 THE WITNESS: It -- it only changed that they
20 were part of Flight Standards, and they did basically
21 the same job that they were doing and fed the
22 information to us to be used in procedures design or
23 development and time frames. When they became our
24 responsibility, they report to me, and then I have just
25 a bigger area that I'm responsible trying to satisfy

1 all the customers out there.

2 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Did it affect the input
3 from user groups in the process?

4 THE WITNESS: I don't think so. No, sir.

5 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: There's been some comments
6 have come out regarding the Guam approach. They're in
7 the factual -- operational factual report. One pilot
8 said it's an unusual airport approach and takes a local
9 knowledge to fly it. Another pilot said the approach
10 to Runway 6 left has to be well briefed, and the pilots
11 have to pay close attention to the approach to make it
12 successful, and another pilot stated there should be a
13 dedicated non-precision approach plate for the
14 localizer-only approach to Runway 6 to help alert
15 crews.

16 How would you respond to those user comments?

17 THE WITNESS: Well, first of all, I respect
18 all those pilots' comments. I personally don't think
19 it's a particularly difficult approach. I think local
20 knowledge from any area in flying is beneficial. It
21 has been my belief that the air carriers do that and
22 have their captains fly it before they fly it as the
23 captain to a place normally.

24 To the second part of that question was that
25 the other pilots -- the second one was that -- oh, it

1 was well briefed. I believe that is true. I think
2 every mission -- every flight should be well briefed
3 all the way from starting engines to shutdown.

4 And the third one of a different approach, I
5 have been taught, and I taught as an instructor, when
6 you're flying an ILS, you automatically would start
7 timing at a FAF, which is not necessarily the same as
8 the ILS, for the approach or if any reason, you lost
9 the glide scope in your aircraft or on the ground, you
10 could continue on the localizer approach as long as you
11 hadn't gone below the MDA, and the approach is right in
12 front of you, and you don't have to fumble and try to
13 find another approach to complete it or make a missed
14 approach.

15 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Have you given any thought
16 or consideration to making a dedicated localizer
17 approach to the Guam ILS?

18 THE WITNESS: No, sir, I haven't.

19 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Are you aware -- are you
20 aware of any other approaches where a VOR is an
21 integral part of the non-precision approach localizer
22 procedure within the final approach segment and where
23 the VOR is used as a step-down?

24 THE WITNESS: I can't recall particularly a

1 -- where there are VOR at that point. However, we have
2 many, many approaches with a different piece of
3 equipment or additional equipment required to fly the
4 approach throughout the NAS. There's over -- there's
5 over 10,000 approaches.

6 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: TERPS -- the TERPs
7 procedure, 288(c), states in the final segment,
8 "Minimum shall be published both with and without the
9 last step-down fix, except for procedures requiring the
10 DME."

11 Since the DME is not required in the final
12 segment, why isn't there a 1,440-foot MDA also listed
13 for this approach?

14 THE WITNESS: If you look at that paragraph,
15 and that's the only thing you would consider, it has
16 some shortcomings, such as a DME fix on -- the order
17 8260.19(c) states that as one area that you would have
18 two sets of minimums.

19 All the -- the -- the requirements for second
20 sets of minimums in 19(c) are additional pieces of
21 equipment that the pilot does not need to fly that
22 approach successfully throughout the complete approach.

23 On the Guam approach, the VOR is absolutely
24 mandatory to have to successfully fly that approach
25 entirely. If we had a second set of minimums for the

1 VOR without the VOR, in my opinion, that would lead the
2 pilot down a path that he would think he did not need
3 the VOR for that approach, and if he got down to the
4 minimums and tried to make a missed approach, the
5 missed approach is required for the VOR and the DME,
6 and we -- if he had a lost column, there's no place to
7 go, and he has no idea where he needs to go.

8 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I'm not sure I understand
9 why the VOR is required in its entirety for the -- for
10 the approach if there would be VOR out minimums.

11 THE WITNESS: The VOR is a -- we use a -- a -
12 - not a vector but a route to get in from the end route
13 in case of lost column. We give the pilots a way to
14 get to shoot the procedure. If you get to the minimums
15 and make the missed approach, you must have a way to go
16 to the missed approach, either holding fixed or the
17 end-route system.

18 On this system that we have here, the
19 uniqueness of having just one big VOR in this part of
20 the area, that that is part of the missed approach, and
21 the DME is the missed approach holding fix.

22 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Could you explain the
23 meaning of the note DME required on the approach plate?
24 Do we need -- would you like to refer to it on the
25 board? Could we have Exhibit 2-N, please, Ted? On the

1 top of it, there's a note.

2 (Pause)

3 THE WITNESS: The missed approach is down
4 here, but if I had -- we had minimums with this --
5 stopping here, the pilot would continue with this track
6 without the VOR, he would be sort of lost in space and
7 not having a way to get back to the holding fix and
8 especially if you have a lost column, and that's where
9 we take the worst case.

10 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I -- can you think of
11 another airport under FAA jurisdiction with an approach
12 that has the note just DME required?

13 THE WITNESS: Having a note of DME required
14 only? No, sir. But I can think of many approaches
15 that have different equipment required from single --
16 this one VOR to VOR -- I mean DME to DME or radar or
17 ADF required.

18 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Could you explain why, if
19 DME is required, it's not listed in the title, like
20 ILS/DME?

21 THE WITNESS: Well, to fly a procedure or to
22 be named on a procedure, the procedure name is arrived
23 from what it takes to fly the final approach. On an
24 ILS approach, glide slope intercept is the FAF, and the
25 DH is the missed approach area. So, you don't need DME

1 to fly that final.

2 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Would a procedure turn on
3 this as an entry to this procedure would have done away
4 with the necessity for the note DME required?

5 THE WITNESS: No, sir. There's high terrain
6 out in -- out in this area that a procedure turn would
7 require us to maintain the thousand foot of clearance
8 in here. We would have to develop DME fixes because if
9 we came to here, we would have too steep a descent
10 angle to make an approach from.

11 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Well, I think the VOR
12 Alpha approach has a procedure turn entry, if I'm not
13 mistaken. Does it have a different procedure turn
14 altitude?

15 THE WITNESS: No, sir. But that makes it a
16 non-straight-in approach, and it's a circling approach
17 only because of the height at the VOR. It's too steep
18 to get down.

19 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: But it's still flying over
20 the same terrain essentially, isn't it?

21 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. But it's -- it is
22 much higher than with the DME that we could put the
23 final approach fix out farther.

24 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: The -- the note DME from
25 UNZ VOR, what provides the specific guidance for that

1 note?

2 THE WITNESS: There's a paragraph in our
3 manual that before using a -- a DME, other than the
4 paragraph, that we need to do that.

5 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Is that -- the -- is that
6 the paragraph that says that the note required is DME
7 from -- and the way it's written in the book, DME from
8 XYZ vortec, simultaneous reception of the ILS and the
9 VOR, DME is required?

10 THE WITNESS: I think that paragraph you're
11 quoting is an ILS slant DMEs or localizer slant or VOR
12 slant DMEs.

13 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: So, that doesn't have any
14 bearing on this one?

15 THE WITNESS: That's correct.

16 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: The 8260.19(c), Paragraph
17 814, states, "Avoid caution notes about obstacles.
18 Notes such as high terrain all quadrants, steeply-
19 rising terrain, etc., are not appropriate."

20 What is the rationale for that paragraph not
21 to mention terrain?

22 THE WITNESS: It is my belief that that would
23 put the procedure developer in a position to try to
24 identify the terrain that they should chart, that if
25 you ignored some piece of the other terrain would be

1 accused of showing or requesting a terrain, and someone
2 else would consider that another piece of terrain is
3 the more significant one if they hit it, and if we fly
4 the procedures as developed, the terrain is not a
5 factor.

6 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Well, what -- what's your
7 opinion on including notes regarding significant
8 terrain or terrain profile, at least on the profile
9 view of the approach plate?

10 THE WITNESS: I believe still in the -- in an
11 obstacle which area -- in other words, having several
12 obstacles, which one do you define, and the problem
13 becomes of what you don't define. So, I again don't
14 think it's a good idea personally. The required
15 obstacle clearance should keep us away from everything.

16 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: But the particular air
17 space on the -- say on the approach segments has --
18 have finite widths, and if the highest obstacles within
19 those approach segments would be defined, wouldn't that
20 make sense?

21 THE WITNESS: Well, you could have the
22 controlling, which would be the highest obstacle, but
23 you could have several of those in there, and the chart
24 clutter, if you put everything that was in that area
25 protected air space, you'd make it almost impossible to

1 see the rest of the approach.

2 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Did any of the Guam
3 approaches require a waiver of standards?

4 THE WITNESS: No, sir.

5 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Are you familiar with PANS
6 OPS or the ICAO standards?

7 THE WITNESS: No, sir. We are -- the U.S.
8 standard is TERPS.

9 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: With your experience, both
10 as an aviator and working in this field for some time,
11 what is your appraisal of the TERPS manual and the
12 guidance you receive for developing these approaches
13 and certifying them?

14 THE WITNESS: The TERPS manual is -- has a
15 lot of information. It takes a TERPS individual to be
16 a journeyman specialist quite some time to master it
17 and know where to look, but it's there, and with our
18 8260.19(c) and other orders for different types of
19 equipment, I think there's several guidance. Some of
20 it could be probably cleared as you talked about. The
21 288(c) that has two identifications, and our manual has
22 many more areas of when you would need dual approaches
23 and examples.

24 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Well, are these manuals
25 subject to interpretation? For example, in the case of

1 Guam, the localizer approach, there is no dual minimums
2 published, but is that uniformly applied or under the
3 same circumstances?

4 THE WITNESS: I believe it is. Any place
5 that it's a mandatory required piece of equipment, it
6 would not be appropriate to put a second set of
7 minimums because it would lead the pilot to believe
8 that if that piece of equipment was failed in his
9 airplane or absent in his airplane, that he could fly
10 that approach, and that he or she would be in serious
11 trouble if lost communications and tried to make a
12 missed approach.

13 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Do you -- do you feel any
14 changes to these manuals to clarify -- to clarify the
15 points? Basically what I'm asking is, do you think
16 these manuals maybe should keep up with -- with the
17 times or are they -- what's your evaluation of them?

18 THE WITNESS: Well, I think they should keep
19 up with the times, but when we design a procedure, we
20 must consider what equipment can fly that procedure,
21 and there are many airplanes of much less performance
22 than some of the newer aircraft and equipment, and they
23 must be able to fly the procedure as well as high-
24 performance aircraft with the very best avionics.

1 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Do you believe that the
2 user input you're receiving now is adequate or should
3 it be expanded on to take advantage of the technology
4 advances in aviation, people who are familiar with the
5 glass cockpits, the GPS?

6 THE WITNESS: We welcome all users' comments,
7 and we will continue to do so, and the more user
8 comments that we get would certainly not hurt anything
9 and probably enhance everything we do, may even make it
10 an easier for our designers when we're doing a
11 procedure.

12 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Have you recommended any -
13 - do you recommend charting procedures or have you
14 recommended any charting procedures which would make
15 the charts more user-friendly to some technique, such
16 as constant descent, that Captain Woodburn talked about
17 earlier?

18 THE WITNESS: Well, I'm not quite sure what
19 we -- if -- we -- we have parameters of glide descent.
20 I think the procedure that we did at Guam, and the
21 altitudes that would be computed, they're very close to
22 a constant descent, if they were flown that way from
23 point to point, but that's not the primary design, is
24 the required obstruction clearances.

1 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: How do you feel about the
2 inclusion of minimum sector altitude areas on the
3 planned view as was depicted in the charts that Captain
4 Woodburn showed to give the pilot a view of terrain he
5 was flying over?

6 THE WITNESS: Those were very interesting
7 charts that he had. As it appears to me that it would
8 have some great advantage for pilots. However, that's
9 the charting folks in Washington to do, and if chart
10 clutter has always been a problem from all aviators and
11 all airports we have, that that seems to be a problem,
12 also.

13 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Okay. As one of my final
14 questions, when you develop a procedure and have it
15 certified, and then the procedure goes to the chart
16 manufacturers, like Jeppesen or Air Rad, or any of the
17 NOS, how much leeway do they have in implementing the -
18 - what they think should be on the -- on the chart?

19 THE WITNESS: They must put the information
20 that we have on the 8260 forms that are sent, must be
21 there. Our standard for the U.S. Government is NOS,
22 and those charts are -- are charted. Those are the
23 charts that my specialists check as soon as they are
24 published, after -- before the public sees them or
25 before they're in use for the public.

1 They may have a shipment before, but we make
2 sure that everything is on that plate is what we have
3 put on the forms, the 8260 forms. What other
4 cartographers and other agencies of charting, I can't
5 comment on that. It's not my area.

6 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Based on the information
7 we've received to date regarding the accident at Guam,
8 have you any -- any thoughts on what you would like to
9 see done or any recommendations you may make in
10 developing approaches or in the future?

11 THE WITNESS: Are you talking about at Guam?

12 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Anywhere.

13 THE WITNESS: The continued coordination, and
14 I would use Guam as we're talking. We are working on
15 two additional procedures for Guam that are R-NAV/V-NAV
16 approaches, and they're in the coordination phase, and
17 the original -- the first look.

18 At the same time, we will review all of the
19 procedures that we have now, and on this particular
20 area, radar was -- the air traffic told me that they at
21 the time could not support full-time radar exceptions
22 of doing the approach or required radar on the
23 approach. They've got quite an area, I understand, and
24 we will -- I will ask -- ask that to be revisited and
25 see what they would think about having radar required

1 or DME, and if the flight check fixes could be
2 confirmed, they must be done before the radar fixes,
3 and if that would fit into their scheme and the flow of
4 traffic for them.

5 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Thank you Mr. Henderson.

6 I don't have any further questions. I believe Mr.
7 Feith may.

8 MR. FEITH: Good afternoon.

9 THE WITNESS: Good afternoon.

10 MR. FEITH: Pardon my ignorance because I
11 stepped out of the room. So, I'm not really sure I
12 caught all of the answers to all the questions that
13 have been asked. So, if I am redundant, Mr. Chairman,
14 I apologize.

15 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: You are taking your turn
16 now rather than after the parties?

17 MR. FEITH: Yes, because we are -- I may have
18 a follow-up after the parties, too. But we'll get to
19 that if I need to.

20 Let me just make sure I understand. There
21 was some testimony on Monday regarding markers as they
22 relate to an approach, and --

23 THE WITNESS: Could I get a little more
24 volume on that? I'm having a little difficulty hearing
25 you.

1 MR. FEITH: As -- as it relates to an
2 approach, the outer marker and middle marker are not
3 required parts of the approach? Do I understand that
4 correctly?

5 THE WITNESS: Are not required?

6 MR. FEITH: Yes.

7 THE WITNESS: That's correct.

8 MR. FEITH: Okay. Teddy, could you put that
9 chart back up? The approach plate.

10 On this, the question was asked regarding why
11 isn't this an ILS DME given the fact that the note up
12 there says DME required.

13 THE WITNESS: The -- the manual instructs us
14 what it takes to fly the final approach, is what the
15 chart's name. This chart takes glide slope intercept
16 at -- on the glide slope and a DH. That's what you
17 need to fly the approach, the final approach, and
18 that's all it talks about, the final. That's the
19 naming.

20 MR. FEITH: How do you identify the missed
21 approach point?

22 THE WITNESS: DH on ILS.

23 MR. FEITH: Okay. If you look at this chart
24 and just correct me if I'm wrong, the middle marker
25 here is the missed approach point, if I'm -- if we're

1 looking at the appropriate chart. Go up to the planned
2 view, Teddy. I mean the profile.

3 THE WITNESS: We need some more -- the bottom
4 of the -- it's the bottom of the approach. Over here
5 is the decision height. That is the missed approach
6 point.

7 MR. FEITH: Okay.

8 THE WITNESS: It is very co-located close to
9 this, but that is the missed approach point on glide
10 scope at that height.

11 MR. FEITH: Are you using DME to get to that
12 point?

13 THE WITNESS: No, sir.

14 MR. FEITH: Okay.

15 THE WITNESS: DH.

16 MR. FEITH: Okay. Now go back to the -- the
17 planned view, Teddy. With regard to trying to identify
18 on a missed approach where the intersection is for
19 flake, it says that it's seven DME out, you see the
20 Note Number 1?

21 THE WITNESS: Yes.

22 MR. FEITH: If you didn't have DME or DME
23 isn't required, how would you identify that?

24 THE WITNESS: You could not.

1 MR. FEITH: So, wouldn't you need to have
2 DME?

3 THE WITNESS: That's why the note DME
4 required.

5 MR. FEITH: Okay. But given all of that,
6 should -- should there not be some sort of change -- I
7 see the note up there, but is that an appropriate place
8 to get someone's attention or to make sure that a pilot
9 knows that DME must be used either as part of the
10 initial part of the approach or a missed approach
11 segment?

12 THE WITNESS: The question is do I think that
13 having the DME required versus having it named DME --

14 MR. FEITH: Yes.

15 THE WITNESS: -- would be less or more for an
16 experienced pilot?

17 MR. FEITH: Any kind of pilot because these
18 charts apply to everybody, not just --

19 THE WITNESS: Yeah.

20 MR. FEITH: -- the commercial airline pilot.

21 THE WITNESS: I think it's the same.

22 MR. FEITH: Okay.

23 THE WITNESS: DME required. If it was an ILS
24 DME, it would be required. The note on this one says
25 it's DME required, and it is required for the -- the

1 missed approach area in holding to get the pilot out of
2 the low place.

3 MR. FEITH: Did you -- was -- I don't know if
4 the question was asked. Since the accident, have they
5 co-located the DME in the localizer?

6 THE WITNESS: No, sir.

7 MR. FEITH: So, it's still separated?

8 THE WITNESS: Yes.

9 MR. FEITH: Okay. Is there any plans to do
10 that?

11 THE WITNESS: I -- I don't know of any.
12 First of all, this -- the VOR here is the DME, and it's
13 a major, major, very powerful VOR here in the Pacific
14 area. It reaches far out. Historically, when we've --
15 the agency installs a procedure like that, it's up on a
16 hill, and, so, it's not blocking out because if we have
17 a VOR, mountains or other buildings or something can
18 stop the radiation, and it's not near as usable.

19 MR. FEITH: And just one other question. You
20 had talked about that you solicited comments from users
21 on the approach or users of the approach during the
22 course of -- of trying to determine what problems may
23 exist on specific approaches?

24 THE WITNESS: If they have users -- air
25 traffic is our probably first line of defense on users

1 comments from someone who has been flying an approach
2 because they will get the complaint, and they are very
3 good at funneling those to us to tell us there's
4 something wrong with approach, and a user has a
5 complaint on them, and we will consider them all.

6 MR. FEITH: Okay. I don't have any further
7 questions right now, but I may have some on the way
8 back.

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Can I ask a question just
10 on sort of a follow-up here? Is -- is it possible --
11 I understand your explanation of the -- you've sort of
12 got a long-range VOR DME there for -- for a lot of en
13 route navigation over the Pacific.

14 Is it -- is it technically possible to have
15 -- to leave that facility as it is and put a co-located
16 DME on the ILS?

17 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. Having two DMEs,
18 you're talking?

19 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Yes.

20 THE WITNESS: Yes.

21 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: And -- and I ~~me~~ I guess
22 you always have a problem of potential confusion, but
23 if you -- if you -- if you dial in the ILS, you
24 automatically get the ILS DME?

1 THE WITNESS: Some -- I understand, and from
2 my experience, that there are some equipment that
3 that's not true. We have -- the agency has had
4 problems when we have two DMEs forward on the -- from
5 an aircraft commencing its approach. They've had
6 problems in the past, and we try to limit that and put
7 very clear notes that -- and that is a potential
8 problem.

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: That was the question.
10 So, -- so, the agency tends to try to avoid that
11 because of possible confusion?

12 THE WITNESS: I don't know if -- that's not
13 again in my area of expertise, but I know that is a
14 problem, and what they tend to avoid, I'm not sure.
15 That's a flight standards, and our AO folks are doing
16 it.

17 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Thank you. I'm through.
18 Finished.

19 FAA?

20 MR. DONNER: Yes, thank you, sir. Just one.
21 In addition to using the DME for the missed approach,
22 isn't it true that it's -- the DME's also necessary to
23 locate the three initial approach fixes?

24 THE WITNESS: The initial approach fixes?
25 Yes, sir.

1 MR. DONNER: Is there any alternative way to
2 locate those fixes?

3 THE WITNESS: Not on this procedure because
4 of an isolated island with one major VOR.

5 MR. DONNER: Thank you.

6 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: NATCA?

7 MR. MOTE: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. We have
8 no questions.

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Guam?

10 MR. DERVISH: Thank you. No questions.

11 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: KCAB?

12 MR. LEE: Thank you, Chairman. Just one
13 question. On the airport, when you look at the
14 approach plates, on Runway 6 left localizer approach
15 procedure, has the final decision altitude immediately
16 after the accident from 560 feet to 580 feet -- it has
17 changed to 580 feet, and then it was changed back to
18 560 feet again. They changed it to 580 feet, and then
19 again it was -- it went back to 560 feet.

20 Was there any particular reason for that?

21 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir, there was. We were
22 asked to evaluate the missed approach area in a 40:1
23 because of the approach plate chart had an obstacle
24 that appeared it might be in the 40:1, and we evaluated
25 it, and it was. So, we had a 20-foot increase on the

1 DMA.

2 However, that was -- that obstacle was not
3 there when we originally developed the procedure. We
4 have since researched that thoroughly and had it
5 verified that that obstacle was in error, and it was a
6 hundred feet too high, and we have since lowered the
7 MDA back to its original because the obstacle was a
8 hundred feet lower than we first believed when we
9 looked at it.

10 MR. LEE: The question -- let me just ask you
11 one more question. Based on the FAA tough standards,
12 when there is DME available, you don't necessarily have
13 to have the outer marker.

14 In the future, are you planning to
15 continuously operate the outer marker? The reason I am
16 asking this question is when we visit Guam, we visited
17 -- when we visited Guam, we experienced malfunction on
18 numerous occasions. It doesn't even have a monitoring
19 function.

20 When you need a DME, I think it's probably
21 more advisable to remove the outer marker and maybe
22 better for the flight operation. Do you have any
23 personal view on that?

24 THE WITNESS: I have no knowledge of the
25 problem of the outer marker or any knowledge of planned

1 removal. So, I can't comment on that.

2 The DME is also co-located when possible at
3 the outer marker. The DME fix, I'm talking about. But
4 I have no knowledge of removal or I have no knowledge
5 of the problem that has been as you say for your flight
6 crews.

7 MR. LEE: Thank you very much. That's all.

8 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Barton?

9 MR. EDWARD MONTGOMERY: No questions, Mr.
10 Chairman.

11 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Boeing Company?

12 MR. DARCEY: No questions, Mr. Chairman.

13 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Korean Air?

14 CAPTAIN KIM: No questions, Chairman.

15 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Feith, you want
16 another shot?

17 MR. FEITH: No.

18 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Cariseo?

19 MR. CARISEO: No questions, Mr. Chairman.

20 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Berman?

21 MR. BERMAN: Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

22 Mr. Henderson, could you tell me when the
23 flight procedures offices were changed to work under
24 the Air Traffic Service?

1 THE WITNESS: The flight procedures -- they
2 were called branches, was in April of 1995. The
3 reorganization took place, and they become part of AVN
4 at that time.

5 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Thank you. Since that
6 time, has there been an increase in the number of
7 procedures specialists who are not pilot qualified?

8 THE WITNESS: There are increases at Oklahoma
9 City of non-pilot qualified, but if I could add, the
10 hiring has been predominantly ex-military procedure
11 specialists who retired, and most of them had from 10
12 to 20 years experience developing it for the military.

13 MR. BERMAN: These are the non-pilot
14 specialists? That's what you're saying?

15 THE WITNESS: Sir?

16 MR. BERMAN: The ones who are non-pilots --

17 THE WITNESS: That's right.

18 MR. BERMAN: -- are in that category? Okay.

19 Has there been any change in your office in terms of
20 non-pilot specialists?

21 THE WITNESS: Any changes in my --

22 MR. BERMAN: Yes, in your -- in your office
23 in Los Angeles, have you hired on specialists --

24 THE WITNESS: No. Los Angeles are all --
25 have all -- have four pilots, and they're all -- that's

1 my authorized strength there.

2 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Thank you. How does the
3 FAA evaluate the flyability or the difficulty of an
4 instrument approach procedure?

5 THE WITNESS: Well, that's a little out of my
6 expertise now, but I was at one time a flight
7 inspector, and it was -- we actually flew the
8 procedure, and we evaluated it again for the lowest, in
9 our estimation, quality -- not quality, experienced
10 pilot, could he fly that procedure on the original
11 commissioning flight check.

12 MR. BERMAN: Hm-hmm. And has that type of a
13 procedure changed since the reorganization?

14 THE WITNESS: No, sir.

15 MR. BERMAN: Hm-hmm. Do you know how the ILS
16 approach to Runway 6 left glide slope inoperative
17 procedure was evaluated for flyability?

18 THE WITNESS: How it was evaluated for -- the
19 -- we were doing the Navy flight check follow-on. So,
20 the FAA was evaluating it from the original day of 1972
21 when it was commissioned.

22 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Thank you. No further
23 questions.

24 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Schleede?

1 MR. SCHLEEDE: Just one clarification.
2 Regarding -- again, I know you were asked, and I'm not
3 sure I got the answer correctly. The approach at Guam
4 that you were discussing, if it -- the name of it was
5 changed to ILS/DME approach, would that change anything
6 about the approach, where the nav aids would be or
7 anything?

8 THE WITNESS: We would remove the DME-
9 required note.

10 MR. SCHLEEDE: It could still be -- the DME
11 could be remotely located. It does not have to be co-
12 located at the localizer to be called an ILS DME
13 approach?

14 THE WITNESS: It should be co-located and is
15 required again to fly final on that approach.

16 MR. SCHLEEDE: You say it should be, but can
17 be a non-co-located DME and still be called an ILS DME
18 approach?

19 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir, if that was required
20 to fly the final approach according to our book, or
21 there'd be a waiver to that requirement.

22 MR. SCHLEEDE: Okay. Thank you.

23 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Montgomery?

24 MR. MONTY MONTGOMERY: No questions. Thank
25 you.

1 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Thank you, sir.
2 Appreciate your contribution.

3 THE WITNESS: Thank you, sir.

4 (Whereupon, the witness was excused.)

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Our next witness is Mr.
6 James Terpstra, Senior Corporate Vice President, Flight
7 Information Technology and External Affairs for
8 Jeppesen Sanderson.
9 Whereupon,

10 JAMES TERPSTRA
11 having been first duly sworn, was called as a witness
12 herein and was examined and testified as follows:

13 TESTIMONY OF JAMES TERPSTRA

14 SENIOR CORPORATE VICE PRESIDENT

15 FLIGHT INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY AND EXTERNAL AFFAIRS

16 JEPPESEN SANDERSON, INC.

17 ENGLEWOOD, COLORADO

18 MR. SCHLEEDE: While you're booting up, let
19 me ask you for your full name and business address for
20 the record.

21 THE WITNESS: My name is James Terpstra, also
22 known as Jim. My business address is Jeppesen, 55
23 Inverness Drive East, Englewood, Colorado.

24 MR. SCHLEEDE: And what is your position at
25 Jeppesen?

1 THE WITNESS: I'm the Senior Corporate Vice
2 President of Flight Information Technology and External
3 Affairs.

4 MR. SCHLEEDE: And would you give us a
5 summary of your experience and education that brings
6 you to your current position?

7 THE WITNESS: I have a Bachelor of Science
8 degree. Follow that, I was an instrument flight
9 instructor and airline transport pilot before I joined
10 Jeppesen in 1968. I first went to work for Jeppesen
11 and wrote the -- a number of the textbooks for pilots
12 to pass their FAA written examinations for the private,
13 commercial, instrument, ATP, and then went to work in
14 the charting department in 1973, where I was
15 responsible for flight information design, eventually
16 became responsible for all the production of all the
17 charts and the databases.

18 MR. SCHLEEDE: Thank you. Captain Misencik
19 will proceed. Oh, I'm sorry. Mr. Feith.

20 MR. FEITH: Good afternoon, Mr. Terpstra.

21 THE WITNESS: Good afternoon.

22 MR. FEITH: Mr. Chairman, I -- I had asked
23 Mr. Terpstra to prepare a presentation regarding
24 charting. Since Mr. Henderson was able to enlighten us
25 on the information that is required by the FAA to

1 determine an approach procedure, it is not up to the
2 FAA to actually produce the charts, and, so, I'd like
3 to have Mr. Terpstra just give us a brief overview of
4 how they take the information that the FAA has on their
5 specific forms and provide it to a producer like Jep to
6 produce the approach plate procedures that are in use
7 right now, both commercially and -- and GA-wide around
8 the world.

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I saw that raft going down
10 the river, and I thought maybe we were getting a
11 marine-charting presentation.

12 THE WITNESS: That's a lot more fun than
13 this, I can assure you.

14 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Go ahead, Jim.

15 THE WITNESS: Mr. Chairman, ladies and
16 gentlemen, thank you for giving me the opportunity. I
17 will do my presentation in a little different style
18 than what we've been doing previously.

19 I prepared a presentation at the request of
20 Mr. Feith, and my presentation is on instrument
21 approach charts, and the three items which you can see
22 up on the screen are our sources of information, how
23 Jeppesen designs a chart, and the validation of the
24 sources that we have from the various different
25 government organizations.

1 MR. FEITH: Excuse me, Jim. Can we just drop
2 the lights a little bit so that we can get better
3 contrast? Will you be able to still see your
4 presentation?

5 THE WITNESS: I'm doing fine. Thanks.

6 MR. FEITH: Okay.

7 THE WITNESS: Some of the material which I
8 have prepared is a little bit of a duplication of Mr.
9 Henderson's. So, I will go rapidly past the things
10 which he has talked about, but you'll see some of the
11 things that Mr. Henderson talked about now in a graphic
12 form. So, hopefully maybe that will give you a better
13 picture of some of the things that are in the input
14 into what goes on in the world of aeronautical
15 charting.

16 This is a picture of the approach into Runway
17 6 left at Guam. This is to show that the requirement
18 for an instrument approach procedure is first
19 established by airport and by user. So, this is the
20 start of the entire process.

21 The process, the very first thing that's very
22 important about this is what Bill talked about, and
23 that is that the instrument approach procedures are
24 designed according to a document which we call the
25 United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Approach

1 Procedures, an acronym of TERPS, which has been used
2 for that.

3 It's also important to know that this is a
4 common document for both the U.S. military and the
5 civilians who use the same standard, and this document
6 was originally issued November 18th, 1967, but actually
7 follows another document that was there for some time
8 before. So, the business of specifications of
9 standards for approach procedure design is not new.

10 In February, just last month, the Change 7 to
11 the TERPS was signed. I said here it's issued. It
12 really was signed, and it will be issued after it comes
13 out of the government publications, but it's important
14 that there is a continual updating of the criteria that
15 goes into the TERPS, and we are now about to have
16 Change 17.

17 We heard mentioned a couple times earlier
18 today a document called PANS OPS. That's actually the
19 international design, according to ICAO or the
20 International Civil Aviation Organization. PANS OPS
21 Document 8168, which is an equivalent document for an
22 international standard.

23 MR. FEITH: Can I just interrupt you and --
24 and just for the benefit of the audience, can you just
25 tell us what PANS OPS is?

1 THE WITNESS: PANS OPS is the document. It's
2 not at an annex level. It's a level below, and PANS
3 OPS is -- well, I'm not sure what that stands for.
4 It's operations, but PANS something. Wally? Pardon?
5 Yeah. Navigation Operations.

6 But this is the document that's, as I said,
7 not as a standard, but it's a recommendation within
8 ICAO which is used by most of the governments
9 throughout the world as their standard for the design
10 of the instrument approach procedures, and it's
11 equivalent to the U.S. TERPS criteria. However, there
12 are some slight differences between the two.

13 MR. FEITH: Thank you.

14 THE WITNESS: The illustration you're looking
15 at here is the cover of the actual document that's out
16 in the field right now. The next part of this I hope
17 you can see, but what's important that you look at here
18 is that at the bottom of the cover is a series of
19 people who comply with this document, which includes
20 the Army, Navy, Air Force, Coast Guard, and the FAA.

21 The reason that this is important is because
22 this procedure originated as Mr. Henderson told you a
23 number of years ago as a military instrument approach
24 procedure and was eventually converted to a civilian
25 approach procedure, but the difficulty in doing that is

1 not that large because they both comply with the same
2 criteria.

3 Some of the elements of the TERPS for the
4 construction of this are from the en route environment
5 all the way down through and including landing, and in
6 the event landing is not accomplished, then also the
7 missed approach procedure, and there are terms which
8 are used, like initial approach segment, final approach
9 segment, missed approach point and so forth, and each
10 of these have a required obstruction clearance which is
11 the amount of altitude between the flight altitude and
12 the obstructions below that within a specified width.
13 That also is what determines the landing minimums for
14 each one of the approaches.

15 As Bill said, the tools that are available
16 for the TERPS experts are very plentiful. They are all
17 trained by the FAA in Oklahoma City. They do use the
18 local topographical charts which are a lot of times the
19 largest scale, usually about 1:24,000. They also use
20 obstacles from the NOS Obstacle File. That is the
21 National Ocean Survey branch of the Department of
22 Commerce within the United States, who has the
23 responsibility of collecting and distributing all of
24 the obstacles throughout the United States.

1 In addition to what NOS has, if there are any
2 obstacles that are known locally by the instrument
3 approach procedure specialists, those are also
4 included.

5 The next-to-last item on here, which is
6 important, is the FAA has an instrument approach
7 procedure automation software, and what this means is
8 that there is now a much more standardized approach to
9 the creation of instrument approach procedure because
10 the variations in that are limited because the
11 automation makes sure that the standard applications
12 are done.

13 Also, it's very important that no instrument
14 approach procedure can be accomplished until it has
15 been coordinated with air traffic control.

16 The illustration you're looking at here is an
17 excerpt out of the topographical chart that's on the
18 approach in to Runway 6 left, and I think you can see
19 the detail there, even down to some of the buildings
20 that are surrounding the airport, and this is the
21 information that's used to accumulate the terrain and
22 the obstacles on the approach procedure into the
23 airport.

24 Once those are done, they're flight checked
25 by the FAA. They are then entered into the FAA Form

1 8260-3, which is for instrument -- for the precision
2 instrument approach procedures or what's known as a -5
3 for the non-precision instrument approach procedure.
4 There's also a -7, which is used for the tailored
5 approaches as published by the FAA.

6 Now the part in here that you see is part of
7 where we start to get involved. These are submitted to
8 Oklahoma City for review, and then they are coordinated
9 back with the designer of the procedure for any
10 corrections that need to be made, and then they are
11 sent to the aviation industry for review, and I think
12 Bill gave you the list very well of people that do look
13 at this.

14 At that point, we talked about a transmittal
15 letter, but it's also submitted to the Federal
16 Register, which is an important part, because it
17 becomes a legal document, and then it is sent to the
18 FAA National Flight Data Center or NFDC within the FAA
19 in Washington, D.C., 800 Independence Avenue, where
20 then it is released for the official distribution as a
21 public instrument approach procedure chart, and that
22 piece of information is then picked up by charting
23 agencies, such as ourselves, and NOS gets it at the
24 same time as well as Air Ad and other charting
25 agencies.

1 What you're looking at here is the actual FAA
2 Form 8260-3 for the ILS Runway 6 left approach at
3 Agana. The part that you see highlighted in red here
4 is very, very important. This FAA Form 8260-3 is
5 actually an FAR Part 97.29. This is now a legal
6 document. It's within the Federal Register. It's a
7 Federal Aviation Regulation, and any changes that are
8 made to it have to go through a legal process to do
9 that.

10 Look at some of the pieces of it. If you
11 look at the top, as you remember from the approach
12 chart that you looked at earlier, the DME arch is an
13 example. Go up into the top portion of the 8260 that
14 show the altitudes, the beginning and the ending of the
15 DME arch segment.

16 The next block at the bottom has all of the
17 information that's applicable for the final approach
18 segment, where it starts, what its altitudes are, glide
19 scope angle and so forth, and then the minimums
20 actually specify how low the airplane is authorized to
21 go while it is still in instrument meteorological
22 conditions.

23 There's also additional flight data in the
24 lower right-hand corner that gives us information, such
25 as DME required or simultaneous reception or whatever

1 type of note that's applicable. In addition to that,
2 there are obstacles that are included when the
3 instrument approach procedure specialist deems that
4 it's appropriate that an obstacle be placed on to the
5 instrument approach chart, it's noted in this area.

6 One of the things that I think is very, very
7 important to recognize, and what I'm calling a
8 distinction, what you have seen now is the development
9 of an instrument approach procedure.

10 As of this moment, there still is no
11 instrument approach chart. The chart does not happen
12 until the government officially releases the instrument
13 approach procedure. So, my third line that you can see
14 down there says "an approach procedure is not the same
15 as an approach chart".

16 The procedure is the -- what the pilot flies
17 from a procedural standpoint. The chart is what's used
18 in order to depict what the pilot actually does. The
19 distinction here is the FAA or other governments create
20 the instrument approach procedures, whereas Jeppesen,
21 NOS, Air Ad, Swiss Aire, and so forth actually then
22 produce instrument approach charts.

23 One of the things that you saw at the
24 beginning that Mr. Feith had requested that I give to
25 you are some of the sources of the information that's

1 there and where those pieces come from, and as you look
2 at this illustration here, Agana ILS is shown at the
3 bottom, just atop that chart, but you can see through
4 the -- I don't know how well this is -- it doesn't read
5 quite as clearly as what I would like to.

6 So, I will read some of these to you. Every
7 approach procedure, you can see that the FAA Form 8260-
8 3 is one segment of that entire approach chart. That's
9 one piece of it. In addition to that, the
10 intersections and their formations come from the NFDC
11 fix list. The components out minimums come from the
12 TERPS criteria. The Jeppesen speed and descent rate
13 calculations, which are the time, speed and distance
14 box, are additional pieces. The special use air space
15 come from air space dockets. The holding patterns come
16 from different documents. The communications come
17 through the National Flight Data Center in the NIFDIs.

18 The obstacles come from the NOS sources as
19 well as do the terrain, and, additionally, some of the
20 terrain, the digital terrain elevation data and the
21 approach lights come from a completely different source
22 for us to know that there are approach lights available
23 at an airport.

24 What I would like to do now is to show you
25 some of those official sources that are used as the

1 input into the approach chart, and what you're looking
2 at here is the National Flight Data Digest published by
3 the FAA through their National Flight Data Center, and
4 this is for a date that's effective 7 -- it's a NIFDI
5 that was released on July 25th, 1996, and it says in
6 here distances are magnetic, distances are nautical and
7 so forth, Azimuths are magnetic, and then effective on
8 October 10th, and that's the information, and the
9 details of that down here show that for Guam, I have
10 two illustrations up here, for Guam, the flake
11 intersection, which you saw as a note for one of the
12 initial approach fixes for that instrument approach
13 chart, actually is designed here.

14 It's been modified from a previous depiction
15 or specification of how it's constructed, that in this
16 case, you can see that it's from the UNZ or Nimitz
17 Vortac 241.04 degree radio at 7.00 nautical miles, and
18 its latitude and its longitude, and in this particular
19 case, the FAA says that this flake intersection is to
20 be charted on the instrument approach procedure chart,
21 which means that you will not find that same
22 intersection on any of the SIDS or STARS, if they were
23 there, or the en route or area charts.

24 The communications which are on the chart
25 that are at the top of the approach chart with one

1 series of communications and the top of the airport
2 chart for another series, these are a series of entries
3 that we have created from source, and you can see that
4 the NIFDI, which is the National Flight Data Digest
5 145, that was issued July 28th, 1995, in the com
6 section of the Pacific area shows that Agana, Guam,
7 International Airport, the ground frequency of 119.0 is
8 changed to 121.9.

9 So, you can see in here that the chart that
10 was current at the time of the accident shows a ground
11 control is 121.9, and also over here, it's 121.9, and
12 that's because of what the FAA issued through the
13 National Flight Data Digest.

14 In addition, in July of '95, the ATIS or
15 Automatic Terminal Information Service, was also added
16 on a frequency of 119.0. So, you can see the
17 frequencies of ATIS 119.0 on both of them. So, this is
18 how the communications that are created at an airport
19 get into the system to ensure that that's available to
20 all the producers of charts.

21 The minimums that are on the chart themselves
22 actually come from the FAA Form 8260, which includes
23 the visibility, and since there's no runway visual
24 range or RVR, they're expressed in miles rather than in
25 feet, but there also are a couple components out

1 minimums in here.

2 This is the runway alignment indicator lights
3 or approach lighting system. I one of those are out,
4 the visibility goes up to three-quarters. So, in this
5 case, the minimums for the components out are stated in
6 Sections 3 and 4 of the TERPS, and there's also --
7 whether there's glide slope availability changes the
8 minimums, of course, becomes -- now becomes a localizer
9 approach and approach light availability, and the
10 content of 8260-3 is where the approach content
11 actually is derived.

12 The obstacles that you heard Mr. Henderson
13 talk about earlier are the bases on which the
14 instrument approach procedure altitudes are created and
15 also the optimum paths that are there, and you heard
16 him tell why the procedure turn was not there on this
17 approach, and it has to do with the obstacles.

18 In order to create the instrument approach
19 with the obstacles that are there, that comes from a
20 number of sources, and what we do to pick up those
21 sources is that we create a digitizing capability off
22 of a number of sources.

23 Primarily what we see here are operational
24 navigation charts, topographical pilot charts,
25 sectional aeronautical charts, world aeronautical

1 charts, AIPs or aeronautical information publications,
2 and also 8260.

3 So, this represents all of the obstacles that
4 are significant on the island of Guam, and this --
5 these are from the Hawaiian sectional chart that's
6 dated '97. In the lower right-hand corner over here,
7 you can see there's a final approach segment
8 controlling obstacle as well as a 724-foot antenna
9 which is at this latitude-longitude, and that's why
10 when you look on the chart itself, you will see an
11 altitude of 724 feet depicted on the chart just next to
12 the VOR location.

13 The terrain depiction, and you heard this
14 morning from Captain Woodburn that there are a couple
15 different ways of doing depiction on, whether it's
16 color or black and white or green or brown, and a lot
17 of variations, and what we have decided to do, because
18 of the flight tests that we conducted, is to do those
19 in brown.

20 We did a whole series of flight tests with
21 about six different airlines in simulators in all
22 different kinds of light conditions, and we -- when we
23 first decided to put terrain on the chart, we had a
24 number of samples that were in both green, and we did
25 samples that were also in brown, and my personal

1 preference was going to be green because I like the
2 color green. I don't think it was so strong with the
3 other things that are on the chart.

4 It's kind of interesting how wrong you can be
5 proved when you give it to a number of pilots in a
6 controlled environment where we had human factor
7 specialists that were running the tests, and the pilots
8 came back overwhelmingly in favor of the brown color,
9 and when we asked why, the overwhelming answer is that
10 brown scares me, green is pastoral.

11 So, that's the reason why we went to the
12 brown color, and as you know from Captain Woodburn this
13 morning, that that is also the criteria within the ICAO
14 Annex 4 for terrain contours when it's actual ground,
15 but it was very interesting to have that validated
16 through human factors tests with actual pilots flying
17 it, that they decided that the brown was the better of
18 the two colors.

19 The criteria for when terrain goes on because
20 one of the questions probably has come up in your mind,
21 is why the Agana ILS 6 left approach did not have
22 terrain, and that's because through the agreements that
23 we've had with our airlines, seminars in the airline
24 community, as well as a lot of the general aviation
25 input, is that there should be a criteria because you

1 don't want terrain to be on all charts, you want it
2 there when it's significant.

3 So, the definition of significant is
4 difficult to come by, but where we drew our line is we
5 said that in order for terrain to be on a chart, there
6 needs to be at least one elevation that's 4,000 feet or
7 greater above the airport in at least one planned view
8 of the airport or if there's one elevation that's 2,000
9 feet above the airport within six miles, then once we
10 do that, then every one of the contour lines, they
11 start at the nearest 1,000 feet to the airport
12 elevation, and then they are at 1,000-foot intervals
13 all the way up to the top altitude that's depicted.

14 It also -- you'll find some of the charts
15 that we have, if there's been a special customer
16 request that says we would like terrain on here because
17 it's a special airport for us, and then we will do that
18 as well.

19 It's important to know that there are many
20 sources for the terrain information. Some of that's
21 digital terrain elevation data that comes from the
22 military, but as you heard said before, that from Don
23 Bateman, that the availability of the volume and detail
24 of that is still considered to be secret by a lot of
25 militaries, and that information really needs to come

1 out in the -- in the public, we believe.

2 In addition to the digital terrain, we ~~so~~
3 use sectional charts and topographical charts as the
4 basis for where the terrain comes from. Special areas
5 prohibited alert and so forth, those come from special
6 documents.

7 Just south of the Guam Airport is a military
8 warning area called W-5.17, and you can see in the
9 upper part of the illustration here, that these are the
10 boundaries of that 5.17, and then there are the Class D
11 air space or other air spaces around. Every one of
12 those come from a different set of dockets that are
13 released officially by the -- by the FAA.

14 The airport lighting. What's interesting
15 about this airport and a bit unusual is that it was
16 converted from a military to a civilian airport, and
17 the military is also a bit stingy on how they release
18 their information. So, we picked up all of our first
19 information for the lighting of the airport from the
20 airport facility directory or the FLIP, and then from
21 that point, any revisions, once it goes into the
22 official FAA system, then the National Flight Data
23 Center is responsible for issuing additional NIFDI
24 items.

1 So, the approach lights for Runway 6 left off
2 the end of the runway that you can see in the planned
3 view illustration as well as the airport diagram that
4 have all the different kinds of lights here come from
5 in this case the airport facility directory and will be
6 updated by the National Flight Data Center.

7 Conversion table, which is at the bottom, the
8 three-degree angle is specified, and you saw Bill
9 Henderson talk earlier about that value on the 8260.
10 From that information and that he specifies that the
11 distance from the final approach fix to the missed
12 approach point is 4.4 nautical miles.

13 With those two values, then we can compute
14 for the pilot use at various air speeds that he may fly
15 the approach, what his descent rate would be in feet
16 per minute as well as the timing from the non-precision
17 final approach fix to the missed approach point.

18 One of the things that's important is that
19 once you get something out in the field, it never stays
20 current because there's always changes that are going
21 on, and the revisions to the procedures come to us from
22 many different sources, and you can see here the
23 National Flight Data Center is usually the releasing
24 authority for the changes which will be by 8260,
25 changes or could be communications or notes, and here's

1 an actual change that we just processed the chart last
2 month, and you can see our date stamp on here for
3 February 3rd, 1998, because there is now a note that
4 went on to the Guam chart, and it says here to add the
5 note "localizer minimums require simultaneous reception
6 of IGUM", which is the localizer, "and the Nimitz
7 Vortac."

8 So, the simultaneous reception discussion
9 which you heard Bill talk about a few minutes ago,
10 there's now revision to the chart that is now out in
11 the field as the current chart that has a February 28th
12 revision date on it because of this change that went
13 out February 3rd. So, that's a -- if you look at the
14 chart that's in the field today, the simultaneous
15 reception note is now on that chart.

16 Just as a reminder, one of the important
17 things we're talking about now so far just the FAA,
18 there are over a 190 countries throughout the world,
19 and, so, this is only one of the many. We also get
20 source information from Korea for all the airports that
21 are in the Korean air space, and all the other
22 countries throughout the world that require charting
23 for instrument approach procedures.

24 Question is how we design a chart, and I'll
25 not spend much time on here, but it's important, first

1 of all, Captain Jeppesen, who was an airline pilot for
2 United Airlines, started this in 1934, and there is a
3 department which we call the Flight Information Design
4 Department, that includes pilots and flight instructors
5 as well as former controllers and chart experts and
6 cartographers who are responsible for the design, but
7 very important is the next bullet up from the bottom
8 here, what we call our Jeppesen Listens Comment Cards.

9 They're a blue color, so our people inside
10 call them the Blue Cards, but what these are is
11 comments that come back from the customer to say why
12 don't you do this or would you do that or I would
13 suggest this or I saw this, and if you would have done
14 it this way, which is a very valuable input, it's a
15 feedback loop from the actual end user, followed by
16 chart seminars that we have been conducting for years,
17 in addition to the airline seminars, which every three
18 years, we get all of our airline customers together in
19 a room for about four days and go over the proposals,
20 and it's based on the proposals that we have created
21 for the designs of which the airlines then make a
22 decision on which direction that we should be doing
23 with our charting specifications. That bottom bullet
24 is a very, very important part because it's the user
25 who really drives what needs to be done from a charting

1 standpoint.

2 A couple things to look at, and as you look
3 at the design of a chart, I'd like to start it from two
4 different approaches. One is from the smallest detail,
5 and then also from the highest overview, and the
6 smallest detail, what's interesting is if you look at
7 this number right here, it looks like it's a 215, and
8 if you use a normal PC with a font, you'll see that
9 that's 215.

10 The reality is that's the identifier for the
11 Rand Tool Illinois Airport, and the identifier is 2I5.

12 It is not 215. So, from the smallest detail, we have
13 created our own font. We do not use a standard font
14 for the charts. We create a font that has the seraphs
15 on the I's so that the pilot can tell that's a 2I5
16 rather than a 215, and also this is very interesting
17 because this is from Captain Jeppesen about six years
18 ago.

19 He said to me, "Jim, I got an idea now, why
20 don't you do it?" And what he was suggesting because
21 the 3, if you put a line on the front side of that, it
22 can be very easily confused with the Number 8. He
23 said, "If you put a bar across the top of it, you'll
24 never get it confused with a Number 8." So, we have
25 all of our 3s that have this shape of number, you can

1 see the 3 here, the 3 here, and the 3 here, but where
2 it's really important is when it's a latitude-longitude
3 on a chart that gets close to another element that's on
4 the chart.

5 That's the detail level, but from the highest
6 overview, it's very important to recognize the design
7 of the Jeppesen charts are based on the intended use,
8 which is by experienced instrument-rated pilots. So,
9 we assume that the pilot has his instrument rating or
10 ATP and is a certified pilot.

11 Without human factors, a lot of the things
12 that we do would not really come up the way that they
13 should because the human factors experts find a lot of
14 things that we, that are so close to it, don't find.

15 The Volpe National Transportation System
16 Center has done a lot of human factors work on our
17 charts with us, and the FAA sponsored a program which
18 is a human factors program conducted by Dr. Bill Connor
19 and Jill Cox, which did a complete human factors.
20 There are numerous flight and simulator tests. Boeing
21 has sponsored a study of what the pilot's eyes do when
22 they look at the approach charts.

23 The ATA Charting and Data Display Task Force
24 has been doing a lot of work from a human factors that
25 do flight tests of the actual changes that are

1 recommended, and at the bottom is an important effort
2 that was initiated because of an NTSB recommendation a
3 couple years ago of a new task force called the ATA
4 Charts Database and Avionics Harmonization Task Force,
5 which really looks at the human factors of what all
6 information a pilot has to look at and where they
7 should be the same and where they cannot be, how do you
8 go about training the pilot to understand where those
9 differences are. It's a very important education thing
10 for everybody that's involved in the system.

11 We just introduced a new briefing strip, and
12 what's important about the approach to this concept is
13 that it was in prototype use actually out in the field
14 in the pilots' hands that were their charts to be used
15 for a period of about two years.

16 We received literally more than 4,000 pilot
17 surveys, had to hire a couple people just to do the
18 analysis of the surveys, but based on the surveys, we
19 released a new format that was in September of last
20 year, and everything that you see here, which is known
21 as a briefing strip, is a result of a very large effort
22 that was mostly human factors driven by actual flight
23 tests of pilots in simulators followed by the pilots in
24 the airplane that did the test, and the responses back
25 that we got were very, very good and caused us to

1 change some things.

2 A very subtle little change in here is that
3 we put our logo right in the middle of the chart at the
4 top because that used to have communications in there,
5 and the pilots were complaining because the clipboard
6 on the control yoke of the airplane was covering up
7 important stuff. So, now we put the Jeppesen logo up
8 there, and they get to cover our logo.

9 In addition to that, one of the latest
10 changes is what we are using as missed approach icons,
11 and again a series of flight tests that said when you
12 do the missed approach, the first thing that you do is
13 climb straight ahead to 5,800 feet, and it also has the
14 type of approach lights that the pilot should expect
15 when he lands out from underneath on the approach as
16 he's approaching the airport. These are the lights
17 that he should be looking for. So, it's another aid
18 from a human factors standpoint, so that if he breaks
19 out underneath and doesn't see this, he's got another
20 check for what he should be looking for.

21 The question about how often pilots go into
22 airports and what they do for the first time resulted
23 in a new design that we came up with called airport
24 qualification charts, and this is a whole series of
25 charts for all the airports throughout the world that

1 are the very difficult, challenging airports of which
2 Agana is one of those, and this is one chart out of the
3 series that goes through the details from a pilot
4 briefing standpoint, so that they know specifically the
5 kind of things to look at in a challenging airport, and
6 this is one of the designs that came out of some of our
7 human factors efforts that we did.

8 Now going to the third bullet of the outline,
9 the overall bigger unit, and that's the validation of
10 source, and two things that I think are very, very
11 important for us all to understand is that, Number 1,
12 is that every FAA approach procedure is FAR Part 97 and
13 is technically illegal for us to make a change. It is
14 not Jeppesen's job to go in and make a change to an
15 FAR.

16 What we do is if we find problems, then we go
17 back to the FAA, and then they re-issue it because
18 they're the only authority that can release and change
19 FARs. That same thing is true for every international
20 approach procedure that's included in each one of the
21 state sovereign domains. So, the right of the content
22 belongs to the government and not to us or to the
23 chart-maker and that makes a difference in how we do
24 the changes.

1 What's important is if there are obvious
2 errors, we seek clarification from the authorities on
3 any element that appears questionable as a result of
4 routinely processing the procedure for publication in
5 graphic form. So, those things which we spot that say
6 uh-oh, if they're obvious, we'll send them back or if
7 we find them for any reason, we send them back for
8 clarification.

9 One of the things that's also important is we
10 make no attempt to determine that the procedures
11 prescribed by the governing authorities are in
12 compliance with their own criteria. I think one of the
13 questions which you heard asked by Mr. Misencik a
14 little while ago to Mr. Henderson is were there any
15 waivers that were issued against this instrument
16 approach procedure. That's one of the questions that
17 we would not know the answer to, and it could be that
18 there is a waiver that's applied to it, and we would
19 not know it.

20 We do not go in and check if the government's
21 in compliance with their own criteria, either through
22 criteria that they have made or changed or waivers.
23 So, that's really the authority of the government on
24 their own criteria.

1 However, one of the things that we do do is
2 we enter all of the instrument approach procedures into
3 the navigation database, into a very large computer
4 database, as a way to validate a lot of the pieces of
5 information that are on the approach chart itself.
6 Those kinds of things, I won't go through the detail of
7 this very complicated chart, but just to let you know
8 there's a very large structure on how all these pieces
9 connect together. When I say pieces, I'm talking about
10 VORs, NDBs, airways, instrument approach procedures,
11 final approach courses, the locations, the latitude-
12 longitude. All of those are entered into a database,
13 and the information as I want to show you one example
14 that we use for an edit, we do a bearing and distance
15 edit, so that for the location on this approach
16 procedure is an example of the location of the outer
17 marker, the Nimitz VOR, the end of the runway, the
18 fixes, the initial approach fixes, an example.

19 We take the values that Mr. Henderson would
20 have put on his 8260-3. We take every one of those
21 pieces of information that he has put in there, and we
22 take that and put it into a database and do a
23 calculation. So, if he says the bearing is 06 -- six
24 degrees is an example, we'd go in, and we'd compute it
25 to be 063 degrees. We say oops, and we have a

1 validation to -- to check that.

2 So, this is how we check against the source,
3 and the kinds of things that we find, these -- from one
4 bearing and distance calculation between two fixes,
5 these are all the things that we are able to check in
6 that one calculation.

7 In addition to that, all of the charts are
8 created out of a database, so that when the instrument
9 approach procedure chart is actually generated into a
10 graphic picture, that that picture, if there's anything
11 that was in the database that's incorrect, a lot of the
12 things that you will never find by editing lots of
13 text, you will find immediately obvious as you have
14 those show up on a screen in the wrong location.

15 So, our computer graphic visual edits, as we
16 create the chart, are kinds of things that are beyond
17 which we talked about earlier that go into the database
18 for those validation, and since we use the database for
19 chart production, if we find an airway that actually
20 has a misalignment in it, we find by drawing a straight
21 line how much misalignment there's there, and the
22 graphic placement from the database actually sticks it
23 there, and this is done for every place throughout the
24 world, and there are a number of geographical
25 locations. If something's not co-located or

1 something's on top of each other, and one of the things
2 that you've noticed in the approach is that flake
3 intersection and the initial approach fix on the
4 localizer are very close together. Those pop up and
5 show up very graphically when you're looking at the
6 charts and the creation of that.

7 The -- we have also an agreement with a
8 number of programmers with our -- we have formed a
9 venture with the Russian AIS Government for their
10 aeronautical information, and we're using those
11 programmers that have created an editing tool where
12 every piece of information that goes into the database,
13 we have a chance to visually edit that, which checks
14 paths, but it's important to know what things are
15 checked, but it's probably as important or maybe even
16 more important to know what's not checked.

17 We do not check any obstacles because the
18 obstacles are not in there on the database. We do not
19 check the procedure validity. So, if the -- if Bill
20 decided not to put a procedure turn in there, we don't
21 check to see that Bill should have or should not have
22 put in a procedure turn because we assume that he knew
23 what he was doing.

24 We also do not check the MDA or the segment
25 altitudes against the obstacles or terrain because I

1 think you heard Mr. Henderson say as an example, there
2 was an obstacle that changed the MDA from a 560 to a
3 580 back to a 560, and there's no way that a chart
4 producer would have any knowledge of that kind of
5 information that's going on out in the field, and we do
6 not check compliance with the TERPS or the PANS OPS.

7 This -- I have a demonstration, but I think
8 because the time is getting a little bit long, I won't
9 go through the demo, but this is an actual graphic that
10 I lifted from the editing tool, and you can see on
11 here, if I would have pressed this button, you would
12 have seen the DME arch on here as well, but what this
13 does is it shows the lay-out of the instrument approach
14 procedure that comes from the initial approach fix
15 that's very close but slightly adjacent to the missed
16 approach track.

17 So, flake and the initial approach fix are
18 very close together, but they are not at the same
19 place, and the holding pattern out of flake is drawn
20 this very large because it's shown to the scale of an
21 airplane that's flying about, I think it is, 200 knots,
22 and then the actual missed approach that goes up and
23 makes a right turn till it does a capture to the fixed
24 coming in-bound to the -- or out-bound from the radial,
25 from the VOR, that physically forms the -- the flake

1 intersection.

2 Okay. Mr. Feith, that's the end of my formal
3 part of my presentation.

4 MR. FEITH: Thank you, Mr. Terpstra. That
5 was very informative. It clears up a lot of questions
6 from the standpoint of who's responsible for -- for the
7 actual procedure versus charting.

8 Can we bring the lights up, please? The --
9 I'll give you an opportunity. I know that you just
10 touched on it briefly with the terrain, but Captain
11 Woodburn talked about how they on the one chart that he
12 showed this morning shows a minimum safe altitude over
13 terrain versus Jep, who shows the actual terrain
14 elevations.

15 Do you have any opinion on which -- which
16 charting is better, worse, any --

17 THE WITNESS: Well, I think it's important,
18 first, to recognize, as Captain Woodburn said, is that,
19 first of all, the most important part is that terrain
20 is actually there. The terrain depiction, we started
21 in 1975. So, we've been doing it not quite as long as
22 British Airways but for about 23 years, and we started
23 out by using the minimum altitude, minimum safe
24 altitude, which we call the area minimum altitude, and
25 also did it in green.

1 So, we started that way as a recommendation
2 from the airlines on the direction that we go and
3 applied that on the area charts first but not on the
4 approach charts.

5 As we started to create some changes to what
6 we wanted to put on the approach charts, we tried to
7 make some decisions on which direction we were going to
8 go. We have approximately 30,000 different instrument
9 approach procedures that we publish at Jeppesen, and
10 one of the things that we're very careful to do is to
11 make sure that we do enough samples so that we have a
12 method that will work every place.

13 One of our favorite sayings is one robin does
14 not a spring make. You can't use one example and apply
15 it to everything.

16 What we did is we found that the application
17 of the area minimum altitude in many cases actually was
18 higher than segment altitude, and we -- we were
19 concerned that if a pilot flew the actual instrument
20 approach procedure as published by the government, in
21 some cases, the minimum safe altitudes were actually
22 higher than those altitudes, and now you've put the
23 pilot in a dilemma of which altitude you actually
24 should be using, the one that's part of the instrument
25 approach procedure published by the government or

1 whether you ought to use the minimum safe altitudes.

2 As a result, we made the decision to go to
3 contours and create the actual contours on the ground.

4 When we did that, it also presented us with a new
5 dilemma. We now have the area minimum altitudes in
6 green on the area charts, and contours in brown on the
7 approach charts, and the human factors there are really
8 not good, and we decided as a result of the differences
9 between the two, it's best to be one way, and we felt
10 that the contours were the better of the two, and as a
11 result of that effort that we had done and the human
12 factors that we had done with the pilots actually
13 flying them, we ended up converting everything to
14 brown.

15 The other part that's of a concern to me is
16 that the minimum altitudes are not legal altitudes for
17 pilots to be flying, and those altitudes that are on
18 there are nice to tell you what the buffer is, but the
19 reality is, is that there are FARs that say a pilot is
20 not authorized to create his own minimum altitudes, and
21 he should not be using those altitudes. He should
22 actually be flying the altitudes as prescribed by the
23 instrument approach procedure and whatever the vectors
24 are given to him by air traffic control.

1 So, those are the reasons why we went to
2 actual contours with the brown color on not only the
3 approach charts but also on the area charts. Different
4 philosophy. Neither one of them are perfect, but the
5 best thing is that the information is there, so that
6 the pilot has an awareness, and as you can see on both
7 the British Airways presentation and our presentation,
8 the higher altitude, the darker the color. It starts
9 out with a lighter color and goes to a darker color.
10 So, the pilot has an immediate cognitive recognition of
11 the change, so that he can see what it is without
12 really having to look at numbers.

13 MR. FEITH: Thank you. Teddy, will you do me
14 a favor and please put up the approach plate real
15 quickly?

16 With regard to terrain and terrain depiction
17 on an approach plate, and slide it up to the profile,
18 Teddy, please, given the fact that the VOR sits up on
19 top of the hill looking at this, it's basically flat
20 plate.

21 Has there been any attempt or should there be
22 any attempt to depict terrain, especially when it comes
23 to mountainous terrain or -- or high obstacles along
24 the approach corridor on this part of the approach
25 plate, so that a pilot knows that they are in an area

1 of high terrain in the area of the step-downs for this
2 approach?

3 THE WITNESS: We have done quite a few
4 studies in order to determine whether the feasibility
5 of terrain in the profile view would actually be able.

6 There -- we have actually presented these even at
7 airline seminars to determine what should be done.

8 We came to the conclusion that they should
9 not be done for a number of reasons. Number 1 is that
10 the profile view is not drawn to scale, and the reason
11 it's not drawn to scale is because some profile views
12 may encompass a total area of maybe five miles. Some
13 profile views may be 30 and 40 miles long. If you do
14 the entire profile view to scale, if it's a very long
15 one, all the real critical information, which is in the
16 five -- last five miles, gets so tight together that
17 you really lose the ability to present the information
18 in the form that's helpful to the pilot. That's one of
19 the factors.

20 The other -- another factor with it is the
21 decision on which profile to use, whether you should
22 use the terrain profile right down the very center of
23 that line or whether you should use the profile that
24 encompasses a wider area. It's not determined which of
25 the two are better and which one should be done. So,

1 that's a complexity there as well.

2 The other thing is it's really not been
3 determined that the addition of that information really
4 is that beneficial. We found that in the planned view,
5 that has been very much of an assistance, but I think
6 there are better ways to solve the problem of descent
7 profile in the profile view rather than applying the
8 terrain.

9 We should look at it again, but those are the
10 reasons why they have not been done.

11 MR. FEITH: You had spoken during your
12 presentation that, of course, Jep is not the only chart
13 vendor. Of the numerous chart vendors out there around
14 the world, do you all interact, talk to each other, to
15 try and come up with some of the common problems
16 amongst the charting vendors and eliminate some of
17 those problems or some of the interpretation confusion
18 that may exist?

19 THE WITNESS: Yes, we do, in a couple
20 different ways. Number 1, there's an ICAO meeting
21 that's being held this week, which I will leave tonight
22 to get there by next day or two, that's for two weeks,
23 an ICAO, to deal with these exact same issues.

24 Also, within the United States, there is an
25 FAA/industry aeronautical charting forum which is

1 attended by FAA personnel as well as military charting
2 and Jeppesen and NOS, to determine any differences that
3 are there and what we can do about them.

4 Also, there's an SAE G-10 charting committee
5 that's chaired by Captain Young, who's with us today,
6 where we also deal with these issues with cross
7 cultures.

8 In some of the international forums, we are
9 dealing with Transport Canada and also to some extent
10 with Swiss Aire, but we have not had much participation
11 with -- by Air Ad and SAS and some of those.

12 MR. FEITH: With regard to the charting, this
13 is, of course, a precision approach that where we lost
14 the -- the glide slope, it now becomes basically a non-
15 precision approach.

16 Are there any efforts right now by the
17 industry or specific airlines to try and rectify, given
18 the fact that we have two different sets of minimums,
19 any better guidance to a pilot when we do lose the
20 precision part of the approach?

21 THE WITNESS: There are a lot of things that
22 are going on at the moment that are going to provide a
23 lot of assistance to this. One of the things that's
24 significant about Change 17 to the TERPS criteria is
25 that the FAA has decided that they are going to publish

1 the vertical angles on the 8260 for the non-precision
2 paths down on the final approach segment.

3 There are some holes that they need to fix in
4 that, but that's one of the major efforts that's going
5 on, and one of the things that's as a result of FAA
6 participating in the RTCA efforts and some of the other
7 efforts, the industry coordination efforts that are
8 going on. So, within the FAA community, the TERPS
9 Criteria Change 17 does add a vertical component as
10 well as an evaluation of the obstructions below the
11 MDA.

12 In addition to that, in Gregory of Transport
13 Canada is the chairman of the ICAO Obstacle Clearance
14 Panel, and they are meeting this week in Brazil to come
15 up with the same criteria for applying a non-precision
16 path for non-precision approaches in the ICAO
17 standards.

18 MR. FEITH: And let me just make one point
19 real quick. This is, of course, a paper-produced
20 approach plate, but we do have this kind of criteria
21 also programmed into some of the newer-generation
22 airplanes in the FMS system.

23 Are there any efforts right now to program in
24 minimum criteria for non-precision approaches where --
25 what's the best way I can ask this? Where the

1 precision approach information is in the FMS, but if
2 there's -- if you lose the precision like in this one,
3 where we've lost the glide scope, the non-precision
4 minimums are also in the FMS?

5 THE WITNESS: There are two things that are
6 going on right now with a couple lead carriers doing
7 the largest share of the work, and it's U.S. Airways
8 and Northwest Airlines, and both of them are -- they
9 have the VNAV or the vertical navigation path into
10 their FMSs, and both of those systems, all the FMS
11 databases in the world now currently have the VNAV path
12 for the final approach segment coded into the database.

13 What U.S. Airways is in the process of doing
14 is creating an approach concept within their industry
15 that says an approach is an approach is an approach,
16 and it doesn't matter whether it's a precision approach
17 or non-precision approach, if we've flown exactly the
18 same way using a descent path, that is a final descent
19 that goes right down to the runway threshold.

20 Northwest Airlines will be starting probably
21 in the next month or two to start putting all the
22 localizer non-precision approaches into their database,
23 so they will always have the vertical path for their
24 localizer-only approaches in their databases.

1 MR. FEITH: So, that basically goes along
2 with some of the comments that Captain Woodburn had
3 talked about, about standardizing all approaches and
4 using the autopilot on as many approaches as possible
5 to reduce workload. This would do --

6 THE WITNESS: Yes, this is correct. I think
7 as a result of the non-precision approach accidents
8 that have been happening over the last three or four
9 years and the technology that's now here, the airlines
10 are recognizing that they need to be doing this and are
11 now starting to create an environment where all the
12 approach procedures will be flown essentially the same
13 regardless whether they're precision or non-precision.

14 MR. FEITH: One last question for you, and
15 this is my softball question to you. Is there anything
16 that, based on what you've learned through us and this
17 accident, is there anything that you believe that we,
18 the NTSB, the FAA or the industry, should be doing to
19 improve safety from the standpoint of charting
20 instrument procedures, giving pilots better tools?

21 THE WITNESS: Well, there are some new tools
22 out there that have VNAV capability and electronic
23 ability. Right now, there is really no back-up if you
24 look at the classic airplanes. There is no back-up
25 when the glide slope is gone. It's strictly fly over

1 fixes at pre-specified altitudes and do a series of
2 steps that are coming down.

3 If you have a -- with the new generation
4 systems, where the vertical portions are certified for
5 approach capability, the vertical portion is in there
6 as a back-up. So, if the glide slope is gone, there is
7 a secondary VNAC electronic path to glide the pilot
8 down to -- to final, and I think that capability, the
9 more that that's initiated within the industry, the
10 better off we are.

11 There are some problems with some of the
12 previous FMSs that may not have quite the level of
13 integrity of getting that accomplished. So, that's an
14 issue that also needs to be dealt with.

15 MR. FEITH: Thank you, Mr. Terpstra. I
16 appreciate your time. Do you have any questions, Paul?

17 We have no further questions, Mr. Chairman.

18 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: FAA?

19 MR. DONNER: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. No
20 questions.

21 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: NATCA?

22 MR. MOTE: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. No
23 questions.

24 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Guam?

1 MR. DERVISH: Thank you. No questions.

2 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Korean Air?

3 CAPTAIN KIM: Thank you. No questions.

4 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Barton?

5 MR. EDWARD MONTGOMERY: No questions, Mr.

6 Chairman.

7 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Boeing Company?

8 MR. DARCEY: No questions, Mr. Chairman.

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: KCAB?

10 MR. LEE: Thank you, Chairman. One question.

11 Regarding this Jeppesen manual, how do you
12 locate the non-precision procedure? Altitude, descent,
13 procedure is indicated as one of the step-down methods.

14 Given that, the manual published by the FAA
15 indicates that it is supposed to be the constant
16 descent. Is there any particular reason as to this
17 discrepancy or the difference between the Jeppesen
18 material and the FAA data?

19 THE WITNESS: You ask a very good question.
20 The reason for the depiction that we have and, by the
21 way, the NOS depiction or the U.S. Government charting
22 depiction shows a constant rate, but by definition,
23 that is not a constant rate of descent the way it's
24 designed.

1 The way the approach procedure is designed at
2 Guam, there are numerous altitudes at different fixes
3 that are not on a constant descent rate. By showing
4 the profile view and the manner in which it is, it
5 shows that the altitudes that are each one of the fixes
6 are the ones that are to be maintained until the fix is
7 actually passed.

8 Because the approach procedure as is designed
9 on a non-precision, you cannot fly a constant straight
10 line all the way down and make all the altitudes and
11 fixes work.

12 MR. LEE: Thank you very much. That's it.

13 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Do you have a further
14 question?

15 MR. FEITH: Well, I just want to follow up on
16 -- you just made a comment, Jim, about that you can't
17 make a constant rate of descent work on this step-down.
18 Am I understanding you correctly?

19 THE WITNESS: Yeah. The way that most
20 instrument approach procedures are designed, that you
21 cannot start at an altitude and follow a constant rate
22 of descent all the way down to the runway and make all
23 of the altitudes work at the exact fixes. It just
24 doesn't work.

1 MR. FEITH: Why -- why is that?

2 THE WITNESS: Because the criteria that's
3 used by both the TERPS criteria as well as the PANS OPS
4 have a policy in most cases that the altitude that's
5 prescribed at each one of the fixes in the approach
6 procedure will be the absolute minimum altitude that
7 will have the required obstruction clearance as
8 specified in the previous segment.

9 As a result of those -- as a result of that
10 criteria, each of those altitudes is the minimum
11 altitude, and when you build your criteria that way,
12 you don't build your criteria for constant descent
13 rate, and that's one of the issues that really needs to
14 be addressed by the FAA, and if you look at the
15 approach procedures around the world that also should
16 be addressed by the PANS OPS, that there needs to be a
17 criteria that says that the fixes that are on a non-
18 precision final approach segment should always be at
19 locations with altitudes that are consistent with a
20 straight line.

21 There are probably six or seven governments
22 throughout the world that do that, and in those cases
23 where there's a constant non-precision descent rate
24 specified by the government source, and Germany does a
25 number of these, then we produce a non-precision

1 constant rate descent, but until the governments
2 actually specify the altitudes that are appropriate for
3 a constant descent rate, that's not the way those
4 approaches can be flown and match all your altitudes
5 with your fixes on the way down.

6 MR. FEITH: Well, given the fact that the
7 last couple of days, we've been talking about constant
8 rate descents with Paul talking about it a little
9 earlier to standardize those types of approaches, and
10 the fact when we were talking to Korean Air, the
11 management pilots, talking about how some of their
12 crews do in fact fly these constant rate descents for
13 passenger comfort, you're telling us basically you
14 can't do it.

15 THE WITNESS: That's correct. And my belief
16 is that there needs to be a new criteria established
17 for non-precision approaches, and the ICAO has done
18 that in some cases as a recommendation, and Germany --
19 I wish I had some of those here, but I would show you
20 that what a number of the governments have done is they
21 have specified non-precision constant rates of descent,
22 and what they do is they have a straight line that goes
23 all the way down on a stabilized descent, and every one
24 of the fixes that are on there that are limitation
25 fixes because of the altitudes that are there, the

1 distances and the altitudes are adjusted so that as you
2 hit each one of the steps, the apex of each one of
3 these steps is on a straight line down.

4 FAA does not design the non-precision
5 approaches that way. That needs to be changed.

6 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Can they be legally flown,
7 Jim, without those changes? I mean if -- if you -- if
8 you pick the highest of -- of the fixes and then accept
9 the fact that some of them, you're going to be higher
10 than the minimal, can't you fly your own constant?

11 THE WITNESS: Yes, and, Bob, what you bring
12 up is a very good flight technique in order to
13 accomplish that, but my feeling is that that -- the
14 criteria by which that's done, even though you can do
15 that now, that criteria ought to be created as the
16 basis from which the non-precision approaches are
17 flown.

18 The -- what we have done in our database is
19 exactly what you've talked about. In the database,
20 there is a non-precision vertical path that goes down
21 to 50 feet above the runway threshold that has a line
22 that projects all the way up that goes at or above each
23 one of these fixes on the way out to where the approach
24 starts. So, there is a way to get that accomplished,
25 but I consider that to be a work-around to the real

1 solution on the long-term basis.

2 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Which is to -- which is to
3 -- to standardize it efficiently?

4 THE WITNESS: Yes.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Okay. Greg?

6 MR. FEITH: Plus, that would also mean that
7 you'd have to establish some point in space where you
8 start that -- that procedure on a non-precision
9 approach --

10 THE WITNESS: Yes.

11 MR. FEITH: -- so that you hit all of those
12 steps at those minimum points?

13 THE WITNESS: And that can be as it is today,
14 either at the final approach fix or further out on the
15 approach, depending on the traffic that's in the area,
16 but that's why I had mentioned there's a basic
17 philosophy within the FAA and other governments today
18 that each of the altitudes are absolute minimum
19 altitudes, and they're not really operational
20 altitudes. They should be changed to operational
21 altitudes.

22 Some of the approach paths today are as
23 shallow as one and a half degrees, and they -- you
24 can't fly a 747 at one and a half degrees. They should
25 be up to a nominal three-degree descent.

1 MR. FEITH: Well, that was my next question.
2 Will -- will a standard like that apply to all types
3 of aircraft?

4 THE WITNESS: It -- it should because
5 currently, today, the ILS default or the standard
6 descent rate on an ILS glide slope today is three
7 degrees or roughly 300 feet per nautical mile, and that
8 works very well for almost any size of airplane, and
9 once you've defined that as the standard for precision,
10 that can also be applied to the standard for non-
11 precision as adjusted for obstacles in the final.

12 MR. FEITH: One last question. We know that
13 there are some airports, though, that do on their
14 precision approaches have a steeper than three degree
15 glide slope.

16 THE WITNESS: Yes.

17 MR. FEITH: And there are some that have less
18 than three-degree glide slope, depending on -- I mean
19 they're pretty close, but --

20 THE WITNESS: The military still has a number
21 of ILS glide scopes that are 2.5 degrees. Almost all
22 of the U.S. ILS glide scopes by the FAA are at three
23 degrees, and they will not go above 3.77 degrees,
24 except by waiver, which is occasionally.

1 MR. FEITH: So, at those airports that have a
2 greater than three degree glide slope, you'd have to
3 make some sort of exception for your constant rate of
4 descent non-precision type approach.

5 THE WITNESS: Well, but the exception is very
6 easy because the information will be shown on the
7 charts, so that you'd know what the descent rate is and
8 the angle. So, that's -- as it currently is by looking
9 at any ILS approach chart today, that information is
10 there and could be on a non-precision approach.

11 MR. FEITH: Very good. Thank you, Mr.
12 Terpstra.

13 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Pat?

14 MR. CARISEO: No questions.

15 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Berman has one
16 question.

17 MR. BERMAN: Hello. Mr. Terpstra, if you'd
18 just take another look at the approach chart for Runway
19 6 left at Agana. Teddy, can you put that up? Yeah.

20 I'd like to refer to the initial approach fix
21 definition for flake, 063 degrees IGUM, and then in the
22 next slide, it says ILS/D 7.0. Do you consider that
23 that second line there might have an implication to a
24 pilot that the ILS is the source of the DME
25 information?

1 THE WITNESS: Not when you consider it's
2 designed to be used by an experienced instrument pilot.

3 The slash in there separates two lines. So, when you
4 read that 063 degrees of IGUM ILS and then followed by
5 that, the DME is from the UNZ VOR.

6 I mean there's always potential for mis-
7 reading of any piece of information on a chart. That's
8 always possible, but in this case, the slash between
9 the two of them is the same as you see in the profile
10 there to illustrate that same kind of differentiation.

11 MR. BERMAN: Hm-hmm. Is -- is or has
12 Jeppesen given any consideration to the human factors
13 of the line breaks on the charts?

14 THE WITNESS: We have done a lot of work with
15 the human factors. With the line breaks like this,
16 we've done some, but this has not been our largest area
17 of concentration.

18 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Thanks.

19 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I think that's it, Jim.
20 We appreciate your time and having come and missed some
21 of Montreal. It's a sacrifice to have to stay in
22 Honolulu instead of being in Montreal this time of
23 year.

24 THE WITNESS: Thank you.

1 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Thanks.

2 (Whereupon, the witness was excused.)

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Our final witness is
4 Captain Wallace Roberts from ALPA, if he could come up.
5 Whereupon,

6 CAPTAIN WALLACE ROBERTS
7 having been first duly sworn, was called as a witness
8 herein and was examined and testified as follows:

9
10 TESTIMONY OF CAPTAIN WALLACE ROBERTS
11 FORMER CHAIRMAN, ALPA CHIPS COMMITTEE
12 AIR LINE PILOTS ASSOCIATION (ALPA)

13 HERNDON, VIRGINIA

14 MR. SCHLEEDE: Captain Roberts, could you
15 give us your full name and business address for our
16 record?

17 THE WITNESS: My name is Wallace Roberts. I
18 go by Wally. And my business address is Air Line
19 Pilots Association, 535 Herndon Parkway, Herndon,
20 Virginia.

21 MR. SCHLEEDE: And you work for the Air Line
22 Pilots Association?

23 THE WITNESS: I am a retired TWA pilot, and
24 when I was active, I was the first chairman of ALPA's
25 Terminal Instrument Procedures Committee or, as you've

1 heard the acronym, TERPS, and the name of the committee
2 was changed later on to Charting and Instrument
3 Procedures. For the last five years, since I retired,
4 I've been assisting them in the TERPS areas.

5 MR. SCHLEEDE: Assisting ALPA with that?

6 THE WITNESS: Yes.

7 MR. SCHLEEDE: Okay. Captain Misencik will
8 start the questioning.

9 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Hello, Captain Wallace --
10 Captain Roberts. The -- could you give us an overview
11 of the -- what the CHIPS Committee does?

12 THE WITNESS: The CHIPS Committee is active
13 on several fronts, all relate to charting issues and
14 TERPS issues. The two are quite different. TERPS, as
15 you learned here from Mr. Henderson and Jim Terpstra,
16 involves obstacle clearance and aircraft performance,
17 nav system performance. Charting involves the issues
18 of how the pilot reads their chart, and we're into new
19 areas of flight management systems, lateral nav
20 systems, space-based systems, and the door's open for
21 new and wonderful things, but it requires that we do it
22 on an evolutionary basis, and mind the store with the
23 older airplanes that are going to be around a long
24 time.

1 In that vein, we meet with the FAA on a
2 regular basis. Jim mentioned the aeronautical charting
3 form. The next one's coming up next month. We meet
4 with the FAA, Air Force people and some industry users
5 and discuss TERPS on a rather informal basis, and then
6 on occasion, we request meetings or vice-versa and go
7 down to Oklahoma City and meet not so much with Mr.
8 Henderson's shop but more with the people that develop
9 the criteria.

10 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: How long have you worked
11 with the CHIPS and the TERPS committees?

12 THE WITNESS: I started doing -- I went to
13 work with TWA as a pilot in 1964 and checked out as
14 captain in 1967 and then started working with ALPA's
15 national all-weather flying committee in 1970, and the
16 chairman of the committee at the time decided we needed
17 a TERPS committee, and I took that over in 1971 and
18 worked as the chairman till 1976 and then assisted the
19 committee after that time until the early '80s when I
20 took a hiatus and worked in different ALPA work until I
21 retired.

22 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Were you involved in any
23 other activities regarding aviation safety?

24 THE WITNESS: At the present time, I'm
25 writing a monthly technical article for a newsletter

1 that's designed for instrument-rated pilots called IFR
2 Refresher distributed throughout the United States, and
3 I guess throughout the world, and I write technical
4 articles that are too technical for general aviation --
5 for general-type aviation publications, and they seem
6 to be well received, and I maintain them on a Web site
7 for people that want to see them after the fact.

8 I know they're read generally. I get a lot
9 of feedback from Air Force instructor pilots that refer
10 to them. I'm trying to get the word out in the more
11 technical esoteric areas that are important that the
12 FAA just is trying to get out there, but, you know,
13 they have the manpower problems with getting out
14 publications and how you do these things.

15 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Captain Roberts, could you
16 give us a brief description of what the purpose of
17 instrument approach and procedure charts are?

18 THE WITNESS: I think that my friend Jim
19 Terpstra did a pretty good job there. My just slightly
20 different bent on it is that it started in 1930s with,
21 I think, Jimmy Doolittle really did the first
22 successful approach. It was called an instrument let-
23 down, and that's literally what it is. To get out of
24 the en route environment to a point where you can see
25 the runway and land in poor weather conditions and

1 safely avoid obstacles and being able to safely
2 maneuver the airplane for landing without seeing out
3 the window until you're quite near the runway
4 generally, and we even have new systems now where they
5 can land automatically without ever seeing the runway.
6 Those are limited applications but nonetheless very
7 important.

8 The air space required to fly an airplane on
9 instrument so far has been far greater than is required
10 when you're flying an airplane on a nice sunshiny day
11 because you don't have the same cues. The pilot
12 certainly cannot react as quickly.

13 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: In your opinion, are all
14 of the -- we discussed all the considerations in
15 designing and -- or developing and certifying approach
16 construction, and in your opinion, are all the
17 considerations motivated by safety?

18 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry. Would you --

19 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I said in -- we're
20 discussing chart approach procedure development. In
21 your opinion, are all the considerations motivated by
22 safety?

23 THE WITNESS: Not entirely, although I think
24 that by far, -- I'm not familiar -- too familiar with
25 how it's done in other countries, other than to know

1 that not every country is as diligent as our country
2 is.

3 I think the FAA does a commendable job
4 overall. I think certain times, there are political
5 considerations that force our friends in Bill
6 Henderson's shop to design procedures that we might not
7 rather see, like greatly offset localizers at places
8 like Washington National or the approach at Kennedy is
9 one that sticks out. Everybody that is really not a
10 very good instrument approach.

11 By the same token, they're difficult to fly,
12 but they're really quasi-visual approaches because the
13 weather ones are higher, but they are approaches that
14 pilots would rather not have in their manuals at all.
15 But those are the minority.

16 I think that most of the places, especially
17 major air carrier airports, where the terrain isn't a
18 problem, in particular the FAA's done a pretty good job
19 overall providing us with instrument landing systems.

20 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: We've been discussing the
21 Guam ILS 6 left approach plate. Would you consider
22 that -- how many different procedures are depicted on
23 that chart?

24 THE WITNESS: Well, I -- I think I -- I have
25 as good a handle on TERPS probably as any airline pilot

1 out there, and -- and the chart has meant different
2 things to me on different days.

3 With the glide scope working, the procedure
4 is a very standard international ILS, except that it
5 does require DMA in an indirect sense to fulfill the
6 entry into the procedure of no radar vector and to
7 complete the missed approach.

8 With the glide scope gone, and I heard Mr.
9 Henderson testify, and he -- he opened -- he -- he lit
10 up another light for me today. This is really not only
11 a localizer procedure but it's a localizer DME
12 procedure, and not only is it that, it's a localizer
13 DME VOR procedure, and in many ICAO countries, I
14 suspect that's exactly what the title would say. It
15 would say ILS DME VOR, and -- and maybe that would
16 serve pilots better in an oddball location like this to
17 be a real heads-up. You've got something here that's a
18 little different than you're used to at most locations.

19 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Well, before we get your
20 comments on the -- the design of this particular
21 approach, could you tell us, in your experience, how
22 many non-precision approaches an airline pilot would
23 expect to perform in the course of a year?

24 THE WITNESS: That would depend upon the
25 airline. If you take a major national airline of the

1 United States, where this country has done a pretty
2 good job overall providing ILSs at all our high-traffic
3 airports, I heard a remark made by a management pilot
4 at American Airlines shortly after one of their recent
5 tragedies, that they surveyed their airline and found
6 that the average American Airlines line pilot flew one
7 non-precision approach a year.

8 My personal experience at TWA on the route
9 structure that we had then, I flew domestic and out
10 here to Honolulu, which is really domestic, also, that
11 I might fly two or three non-precision approaches a
12 year, not very many.

13 Now we get to the commuter airlines or to the
14 Alaskan airlines folks, and they may shoot a lot --
15 quite a few non-precision approaches a year.

16 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: As an airline pilot and as
17 a recognized expert on TERPS and charting, could you
18 give us your impressions of the localizer approach into
19 Guam and comment on the design of that particular
20 approach?

21 THE WITNESS: It appears to be that the
22 approach is probably the residual of a U.S. Navy design
23 which I've assessed this procedure very carefully from
24 a TERPS obstacle clearance standpoint, laid out the
25 topographical maps and all. The procedure from an

1 obstacle clearance standpoint is certainly full
2 compliance with TERPS. There's a lot of options and
3 procedures a specialist has in those areas to create a
4 smooth-flowing approach for the pilot.

5 If you'll note, the VOR DME Runway 6 left has
6 a rather different profile than the localizer
7 procedure. That may not be necessary. If you can make
8 them both the same, the TERPS is complied with in
9 either case, but there's an extension of this
10 flyability, and -- and I think when you get into these
11 type of procedures, there's a missing link, and not
12 only in the FAA but probably throughout most of the
13 PANS OPS ICAO member nations that -- that the people
14 flying the really heavy iron-like air carrier pilots
15 and our Air Force friends flying C-145s and C-5s and
16 these, their needs are not necessarily thought through
17 when the flight inspection's being done in something
18 like a Beechcraft King Aire.

19 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: In your opinion -- would
20 you care to comment specifically on the localizer
21 approach to Guam?

22 THE WITNESS: Well, if I were magically
23 suddenly in charge of facilities at Guam based on what
24 they had in position on the day of the accident, I'm
25 not sure that I may have redone the -- attempted to

1 redone the -- do the localizer procedure to make it a
2 little more like the VOR procedure, VOR DME procedure,
3 but that would require a DME fix similar to the 1.3
4 DME.

5 But what I would really be crying out to me
6 is I got a facilities problem at this airport, and I'm
7 going to correct it, and there's two things I would
8 have pushed for real hard to change, and the most
9 important one, which is important to airline pilots
10 everywhere, is a frequency paired co-located ILS DME
11 facility, so we don't have to rely upon the DME on the
12 VOR, and we can get the VOR pretty much out of the
13 picture, except we still need it to transition on to
14 the procedure and for the missed approach.

15 But I can solve that problem by adding
16 something that's contrary to the FAA policy today, but
17 I'd put in an MDB at the outer marker, a compass
18 locator, particularly since this is a remote island
19 station, and I would create all kinds of flexibility
20 now with all those facilities, and, further, I would
21 seriously consider -- and this is something we're going
22 to take up, is that a procedure this complicated should
23 very possibly be on its own chart, and -- and that
24 brings up the issue of even if localizer approaches are
25 going to continue to be on ILS charts, in most cases,

1 they probably should have their own title, and the
2 controller should clear you for that localizer approach
3 when he knows the glide scope -- or she knows the glide
4 scope's out, and, further, there should be a note by
5 that localizer procedure saying disregard glide scope
6 indications, just as we have today on back course
7 approaches.

8 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: What -- what inhibits
9 those changes? Is that contrary to regulations now,
10 having a localizer-only approach?

11 THE WITNESS: Well, no. Right now, if -- if
12 the procedures specialist and his managers deemed it
13 necessary, they'd be well within their prerogative
14 today to pull it off and put it on a separate chart.
15 But that's contrary to conservation of paper.

16 I mean if you did that everywhere, you would
17 have -- people would be carrying hundreds of more
18 charts around, and in most cases, it wouldn't be
19 necessary. At this location, it's a judgment call. I
20 would have judged to pull it off and put it on a
21 separate piece of paper, but that doesn't mean the FAA
22 did anything wrong by not doing that.

23 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Regarding Guam, is it
24 common procedure to have a step-down on the final
25 approach segment?

1 THE WITNESS: Very common to have a step-down
2 fix in a localizer procedure in the final approach
3 segment, but this is the first time I've ever seen it
4 be a VOR station, and -- and I think that that
5 paragraph we talked about earlier, 288(c)(4)(c), would
6 more properly have a minimum there.

7 I understand Bill's argument, though, that
8 VOR is really required here, but the thing we have to
9 remember is that our people sometimes elect not to
10 split the cockpit because the captain only really has
11 one VOR set, and the co-pilot has one, and they like to
12 do the same thing whenever possible, and this is
13 something that's not true in light airplanes or even
14 military airplanes.

15 We cannot split our DMEs, and the policy is
16 that both sides should be reading the same thing
17 whenever possible. Therefore, to have the option of
18 the higher minimums which result in a lot higher
19 visibility minimums would -- with a crew additional
20 flexibility to the procedure and also help the guy that
21 shows up with just one VOR set. He's going to use it
22 for the localizer in-bound, but then he doesn't miss,
23 he can retune his VOR for the missed approach, and that
24 guy's not taken care of by not having 1440 as a
25 minimum.

1 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: How about the segment
2 altitudes and the minimums? Do you consider them
3 appropriate in this -- in this approach?

4 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry. Would you say that
5 one more time?

6 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: I said the segment
7 altitudes and the minimums --

8 THE WITNESS: Oh.

9 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: -- on the Guam approach,
10 do you consider them appropriate?

11 THE WITNESS: Oh, I've evaluated the
12 procedure. Everything's correct. Like I said, the --
13 whether you have 14 -- 1440 at the VOR is a lot higher
14 than -- than is needed by criteria, but that's where
15 the facility was, and the procedures specialist only
16 has so much flexibility.

17 If he or she is electing to use that VOR
18 station as a step-down, they're kind of married now to
19 the altitude and the terrain out earlier in the
20 approach. So, yes, the altitudes are appropriate, but
21 -- but not as flexible as if I were using a localizer
22 DME. I could do more things.

23 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: And would you care to
24 comment on the notes on the approach plate? In your
25 opinion, what was the intent of the DME-required note?

1 THE WITNESS: I -- I don't like the note.
2 I've never seen a note like that before. Generally
3 when DME is not in the title, it's because it's used as
4 conditional, like radar or DME required. ADF or DME
5 required for something other than the final approach
6 segment.

7 It also brings out to me that we need the DNR
8 work going the naming convention for the final approach
9 segment has been in a state of controversy within the
10 people that work in the U.S. TERPS community, and this
11 cries out for the fact there's something wrong with the
12 naming convention because we shouldn't end up with a
13 note like this in my view.

14 If we do, it should become intuitively
15 apparent to a pilot why that note's there, and that
16 certainly is not the case.

17 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Well, do you feel that
18 note is unnecessary or incomplete or what exactly do
19 you --

20 THE WITNESS: By putting it up in the title,
21 that note is necessary. You can't -- the note is
22 necessary. I guess I would have to agree that maybe it
23 is incomplete. I think that the air traffic facility
24 at this location due to sparseness of nav aids should
25 have committed to the fact they'll provide radar

1 vectors with the terminal radar on demand, like most
2 U.S. domestic facilities do. Then the note would have
3 read radar or DME required at least for the approach
4 plates, but we still have the missed approach problem.

5 But then we could have taken the missed
6 approach back to the VOR like we did in the VOR alpha
7 approach, and then we could have gotten away from the
8 note DME required, and it would have been radar or DME
9 required.

10 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: There's also a note DME
11 from UNZ. Is that note appropriate and adequate in
12 your opinion?

13 THE WITNESS: That note is the note that is
14 required whenever the DME on an ILS does not come from
15 a frequency pair co-located DME station, and, of
16 course, that begs the comment I made earlier that we
17 need ILS DME on all these facilities, but nobody did
18 anything wrong on the day of the accident by not having
19 it that way, but moving forward, yes, I think it's --
20 it's a note we should get rid of by putting in ILS
21 DMEs.

22 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Some of the criticisms
23 that you've voiced or comments voiced about the -- the
24 approach, do you feel that the TERPS procedures are
25 applied uniformly in -- in approach development and

1 charting?

2 THE WITNESS: It's moving in the right
3 direction but probably not as well as it should. The
4 answer is a qualified no, not as to fundamental safety
5 or obstacle clearance. I think the FAA's people are
6 very careful. They're not perfect in that regard, but
7 I think they're diligent.

8 The -- when it was out in the fields, we feel
9 in ALPA that they were less -- there were less
10 standardization on areas of criteria that weren't used
11 a lot, and, so, you would see some local variances, but
12 the local flight inspection people and the procedures
13 being designed in the field gave the procedure designer
14 a better feeling for the procedures. So, that was the
15 plus side.

16 Now we've moved it all to Oklahoma City,
17 which is a down side on having people out in the field
18 familiar in developing the procedures, but the plus
19 side is we have the potential for real standardization,
20 but it's not there yet.

21 The differences are usually areas of
22 confusion and question marks rather than something
23 that's egregious that's going to cause a pilot to have
24 -- you know, not have obstacle clearance or run into a
25 mountain. I don't mean those kinds of problems.

1 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Are there any
2 modifications or changes you'd like to see made in the
3 way approaches are designed and approved and flown?

4 THE WITNESS: We would like to see the
5 serious users of the system have a more formal input
6 into the criteria and into the daily design of the
7 procedures. We believe the -- not only do certain
8 segments of the procedures staff need to be pilots,
9 they need to be pilots that have heavy aircraft
10 experience, C-141 types from the Air Force that are
11 airline pilots, and my ideal would be to have a
12 selected number of active airline pilots trained in
13 TERPS and assigned for a tour of duty along with their
14 flying duties to do some oversight with -- with some
15 teeth in it over at the FAA by the -- in this area.

16 By the same token, the FAA people should have
17 some of their people trained as second command on some
18 of our major airlines that can go fly the jumpseat with
19 that training and knowledge when the weather's really
20 bad and see what we're up against out there flying when
21 the going's real rough.

22 So, yeah, there's some areas in there where
23 we could all be communicating on a technical level a
24 lot better.

1 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Do you feel that user
2 input is solicited enough or there's enough user input
3 taken into consideration in chart development?

4 THE WITNESS: Not on an effective level. The
5 FAA, like Mr. Henderson said, they definitely
6 coordinate with a designated representative from each
7 user group, but what you get -- and I receive these
8 forms for the Western U.S., which is Mr. Henderson's
9 area. So, he and I have dealt with each other quite a
10 bit the last three years or so, and the FAA's been very
11 accommodating to me in providing additional forms to
12 help me assess these procedures, but I've been looking
13 at these forms for 25 years, and even then, I still
14 don't see the same thing as I would if I had that
15 approach chart in front of me to evaluate what was in
16 the formulation stage.

17 So, I think that with the average user group,
18 let's say of somebody's that done TERPS for 25 years
19 like I have, they just really are not looking at these
20 things. The FAA sends them out. There's no doubt
21 about it, but I just -- with some rare exceptions where
22 people have local knowledge, they just can't look at
23 the thing in that form and get much out of it.

24 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: So, essentially, what are
25 you advocating, that user input continues after -- even

1 after the chart is certified then?

2 THE WITNESS: Well, the FAA will always
3 listen to users after the fact. The door never closes
4 completely, but it becomes a lot more difficult for
5 everybody at that time, and it's not even fair to the
6 FAA that somebody comes in, you know, three months
7 after the thing's out and say, hey, look at this.

8 Whenever I brought up anything serious, like
9 Mr. Henderson's always been very responsive. We don't
10 always agree on how serious it is, but I think we agree
11 most of the time.

12 But it would save a lot if the user saw it in
13 a nice chart form and could get in there during the
14 comment period so the FAA can keep the ball rolling
15 where most of the time they should be able to keep it
16 rolling.

17 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: As an airline pilot, what
18 are your recommendations regarding the constant
19 descent? We've heard input from various people here,
20 also Captain Woodburn. How do you feel about the
21 constant descent and also the monitored approach
22 techniques?

23 THE WITNESS: Well, let me take the monitored
24 approach first because that came into being on my
25 airline while I was there as it did most airlines after

1 a series of accidents, I think, in the late '70s or the
2 early '80s. TWA's flight operations management decided
3 it was a good idea to let the -- basically when the
4 weather is really crummy, to have the co-pilot fly the
5 approach preferably with the autopilot, so the captain
6 was freed up to be a monitor and take over at minimums,
7 and I can guarantee I tried it that way. It took
8 awhile to get used to it, but it was a lot better.

9 But it requires that your co-pilot be a very
10 strong aviator, too, and during a period of rapid
11 expansion when some of the co-pilots were new, then
12 sometimes there's a little kink in that system, but,
13 conceptually, it's very sound.

14 As to constant rate descents, as a TERPS --
15 as a pilot, I'm all for them. As a TERPS guy, I just
16 have to issue some caveats because often where we have
17 our most difficult non-precision approaches, and this
18 is not true of Guam, there's places a lot worse than
19 Guam, the terrain along the intermediate and final
20 approach segments, we have so much terrain, we can't
21 even put an ILS in. It won't even work because I have
22 to -- I misunderstood -- either misunderstood Mr.
23 Henderson or -- that an ILS has much more obstacle
24 clearance than a non-precision approach until you get
25 to about a mile and a half off the end of the runway.

1 The typical outer mark of the ILS has 6 or 7-
2 800 feet of obstacle clearance, particularly with the
3 new MLS criteria that's taking over. Well, with a non-
4 precision, you only need 250 feet with additives for
5 precipitous terrain, if necessary. So, -- plus, you
6 can make them steeper because they can go up to 3.77
7 degrees.

8 So, we end up, we've got non-precision
9 approaches that are pretty steep in some locations, and
10 if we start flying a constant descent like Mr. Terpstra
11 mentioned, clear all those step-down fixes, we end up
12 with four-degree glide scopes in some locations, and we
13 have one more problem, is that we have non-precision
14 approaches that are lined up straight in for a runway,
15 but they have no straight-in minimums because the
16 descent gradient exceeds TERPS for non-precision.

17 So, if a pilot lands straight in on one of
18 those, he may be doing a six-degree slope in, and I'm
19 not sure we're advising pilots enough about those kinds
20 of traps.

21 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Captain Roberts, for my
22 final question, do you have any other thoughts
23 concerning TERPS or the procedures that you would care
24 to share with us or any thoughts that we may look at
25 concerning this Guam accident?

1 THE WITNESS: Well, I think that -- that I
2 would continue -- I can't emphasize enough how
3 important co-located frequency paired DME is because
4 now the air carriers all have the equipment. They show
5 up in the localizers on both sides. The DME's there,
6 and now we can use this DME for a lot of things, even
7 when the ILS is working, and we haven't used that tool
8 to its fullest.

9 These marker beacons are 1930s technology.
10 The FAA wants to get rid of them. They're expensive to
11 maintain. The little markers are already being
12 decommissioned. The outer markers will probably
13 disappear, but with DME, we have a running fix that can
14 be -- that can mark the glide slope intercept point, so
15 we can have a reasonableness test of the accuracy of
16 the glide slope, and we can have a fix mark the
17 decision height point. We have all this flexibility,
18 but this will only work if it's frequency paired
19 because the splitting of the sets just drives airline
20 crews up the wall.

21 I think if nothing else comes out of this, I
22 would urge the Board to recommend that the frequency
23 paired DMEs be put on every FAA ILS that doesn't have
24 them.

1 CAPTAIN MISENCIK: Thank you, Captain
2 Roberts. No questions.

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: KCAB?

4 MR. LEE: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. We have
5 no questions. Thank you.

6 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: FAA?

7 MR. DONNER: Yes, thank you, Mr. Chairman.
8 Captain Roberts, thank you for that testimony. I
9 enjoyed that.

10 I have two questions for you, sir, and the
11 first is do you think that the FAA should require
12 pilots to fly a minimum number of non-precision
13 approaches annually?

14 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry. Would you repeat
15 that?

16 MR. DONNER: Do you think, sir, that the FAA
17 should require pilots to fly a minimum number of non-
18 precision approaches?

19 THE WITNESS: There could probably be more
20 done in the simulators. If they don't have an actual
21 score out on the line, it might not be a bad idea, and
22 with some real-world diversions and thrown them in and
23 just, you know, give them some time to brief on it, and
24 then do it in a training and not a punitive checking
25 environment, it would be very beneficial.

1 MR. DONNER: Very good. One last question.
2 In your statement in Exhibit 2 Victor, and you don't
3 have to refer to it, it says, "The FAA should employ
4 persons familiar with real-world airline operations,
5 such as former airline pilots."

6 I just wondered if you were available should
7 we have a vacancy.

8 THE WITNESS: Not -- not unless it's within
9 30 miles of San Clemente, California, no.

10 MR. DONNER: I don't think Oklahoma City's
11 quite that close.

12 THE WITNESS: No, not quite, no. If it were
13 near where I lived, I certainly would consider it on a
14 consulting basis, but the FAA has its ways, and it
15 takes a long time to get to certain things, and I would
16 presume there's other people that may be in airline
17 fields, and they're out on the street at age 45 or
18 something that sure would like to see some of those
19 people working in those jobs.

20 MR. DONNER: Thank you very much, sir. No
21 further questions.

22 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Government of Guam?

23 MR. DERVISH: Thank you. No questions.

24 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: NATCA?

1 MR. MOTE: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. No
2 questions.

3 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Korean Air?

4 CAPTAIN KIM: No questions. Thank you.

5 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Boeing Company?

6 MR. DARCEY: No questions.

7 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Barton?

8 MR. EDWARD MONTGOMERY: No questions.

9 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Feith?

10 MR. FEITH: Just a couple. I just want to
11 make sure that for the record, we're clear. In your
12 statement that you had provided, Captain Roberts, in 2
13 Victor, let me just read you what you had written. I
14 just want to make sure that we have covered all the
15 points and all your concerns.

16 You made the statement in the second
17 paragraph, "Our assessment shows that the FAA's
18 published procedures for Guam International Airport and
19 the resulting approach plate are seriously flawed.
20 The procedures do not comply with the agency's own
21 standards."

22 And I had heard you earlier saying that it
23 met all the criteria, all the TERPS criteria. Is there
24 something else that this doesn't meet that you haven't
25 already talked about?

1 THE WITNESS: The -- the area that -- Number
2 1, I didn't write that statement, although I certainly
3 read it and agreed with it. I think the general
4 impression I have to say in all candor, if I showed up
5 that night and not familiar with Guam and with those
6 notes and that VOR step-down without local knowledge, I
7 would have requested a VOR to DME Runway 6 left
8 approach.

9 I just did not feel comfortable with this
10 procedure, and I mentioned the fact, and only today did
11 it finally sink into me that technically, technically
12 1440 did not have to be a minimum on this chart. When
13 we wrote that, I felt it did, and I have looked at it a
14 lot, and if I have that kind of problem, we have a
15 problem. The system has a problem.

16 MR. FEITH: And one last question. We heard
17 testimony today from Captain Woodburn about mandatory
18 go-around of 500 feet. What's your opinion on that?

19 THE WITNESS: Well, that was the call-out on
20 TWA. So, obviously I did it for most of my crew. I
21 don't think they had it maybe the first few years I was
22 there. Absolutely agree with it completely. In fact,
23 I agree with his idea. I think there should be a
24 thousand-foot call, a 500-foot call, and a hundred-foot
25 call.

1 I think that that really helps crews on their
2 awareness as to this critical, critical phase of
3 flight, particularly in low-visibility conditions and
4 non-precision approaches.

5 MR. FEITH: Very good. Thank you very much
6 for your testimony.

7 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir.

8 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Mr. Berman for a point of
9 clarification.

10 MR. BERMAN: Sir, when you refer to the 500-
11 foot procedure, are you referring to a call-out or a
12 mandatory go-around that's above the minimums?

13 THE WITNESS: I'm referring to call-out. In
14 some better non-precision approaches, our MDA may have
15 a height above touchdown well below 500 feet. This
16 would just be a call for stabilization.

17 MR. BERMAN: Okay. Thank you. I understand.

18 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: I think I have the last
19 question, and this is a -- this is a question that I
20 asked to Mr. Henderson, and I think you were here, on
21 the co-located DME issue.

22 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir.

23 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: And the feasibility of
24 having a co-located DME in Guam, realizing that you
25 have a powerful VOR DME, which is essential for en

1 route navigation and the -- and the difficulties or
2 non-difficulties of having the two DMEs.

3 THE WITNESS: There's no difficulty at all,
4 except for dollars. That VOR DME is there to service a
5 huge oceanic area, and it's really not even appropriate
6 to the ILS as far as I'm concerned and should be as far
7 removed from it as possible, and the ILS -- use the VOR
8 DME to get on to the approach, fine, but we have many
9 approaches where the arc initial approach segment south
10 of VOR DME, but the ILS has its own DME, and when we
11 switch over to the ILS, we're using the ILS DME.
12 That's very common in this country.

13 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: Thank you very much, sir,
14 and I appreciate your -- your comments particularly
15 about more all-around communication between those that
16 are -- have different perspectives on trying to
17 accomplish the same thing which is safer approaches.

18 Thank you.

19 THE WITNESS: Thank you.

20 (Whereupon, the witness was excused.)

21 CHAIRMAN FRANCIS: That concludes our hearing
22 here. I'm not going to read this statement. It's
23 going into the record, but let me say that we remain
24 open to new and pertinent information whenever it may
25 come in.

1 We reserve the right to reopen this hearing
2 should we feel that that's warranted. We would
3 encourage people to send, particularly the parties, the
4 accredited representative, any further information to
5 us, to the Board, in Washington, to Mr. Feith, and
6 there will be at some point a deadline on that, but he
7 or Mr. Schleede will -- will let you know when that is.

8 The -- everything that's been developed here
9 will be coupled with that which is gathered at the
10 other elements of this investigative process and will
11 be considered in the preparation of the final report
12 and ultimately the Board meeting to determine cause and
13 to make recommendations.

14 I'd like to thank a whole lot of people here.

15 I guess I'll start with the parties and the accredited
16 representative. These are never easy times that we're
17 going through after a major accident like this, and
18 whether it's the on-site investigation or the
19 continuing investigation or the hearing or that which
20 comes on subsequently, it's very, very difficult, and I
21 think that -- that we all appreciate, we at the NTSB,
22 all appreciate the cooperative and forthcoming attitude
23 on the part of -- of the parties here.

24 As you know, the way we run our
25 investigations, we are -- we are enormously dependent

1 on the parties in terms of generation of the evidence
2 in the factual part of these -- of these
3 investigations. So, our thanks to all of you and for
4 being here and for helping us.

5 I'd also like to thank some folks from the
6 NTSB without whom, in addition to those here present ad
7 up here who do some of the work for part of the time,
8 but Carolyn Dargan and Candy and Teddy and Van and
9 Elaine and Ann are the folks who have worked long and
10 hard to set this all up and to make sure that we have
11 been able to keep rolling through these three days.
12 So, I'm not sure that all of us ever truly appreciate
13 what these folks do, but -- but certainly our -- our
14 warmest thanks to these people.

15 The interpreters, thank you. The fact that
16 we, for the -- for the Korean interpretation yesterday
17 on the very technical sessions, ended up relying on
18 somebody who spoke three languages rather than just
19 two, it really was a problem of some -- finding someone
20 who spoke not just Korean and English but also
21 aviation, and certainly no reflection on you, and we
22 appreciate all you did.

23 To our court reporter, thank you. We created
24 a couple problems for you at the beginning, but we all
25 seem to have gotten through.

1 Convention center staff, this is a brand-new
2 facility. We're, I think, the first occupants, and
3 they certainly couldn't have been more helpful for us.

4 The Honolulu Police Department has been
5 enormously helpful, and I'd like in that context to --
6 to -- to thank our temporary employee, John O'Brien,
7 who has come here to help us with security liaison.
8 He's been a pleasure to work with and enormously
9 helpful for us. Hopefully I haven't forgotten anyone.

10 Let me make a comment about the families. We
11 started with the families, and I think it's appropriate
12 to end with the families.

13 I can imagine or try to imagine the
14 difficulty that you encountered in trying to follow
15 what is enormously technical and complex. I would -- I
16 would hope that if any of us can continue to be helpful
17 to you in understanding what we're doing and what's
18 going on, that you will -- that you will let us know.

19 As I mentioned on the first day, we are going
20 to make a concerted effort to -- to ensure that we are
21 in good and constant touch with you and can be
22 responsive to -- to your needs.

23 We appreciate very much your being here, your
24 interest. This is very much being done, as you know,
25 to -- to ensure that this kind of a thing does not

1 happen again, and -- and your support and your interest
2 is -- is very, very important and very much appreciated
3 by us. So, thank you very much.

4 Lastly, Mr. Schleede and Mr. Feith will be
5 hosting a meeting immediately after this in Room 301
6 for the parties and the accredited representative, and
7 I think if anyone else can think of something that I've
8 forgotten? No?

9 We are then concluded here, and thank you all
10 for being here and enjoy the rest of your time in
11 Hawaii.

12 (Whereupon, the meeting was concluded.)